

UC-NRLF



\$B 253 854

BERKELEY

LIBRARY

UNIVERSITY OF  
CALIFORNIA





*A. L. Hapling*  
A GUIDE

TO THE

ANGLO-SAXON TONGUE:

A GRAMMAR

After Erasmus Rask,

EXTRACTS IN PROSE AND VERSE,

WITH NOTES ETC. FOR THE USE OF LEARNERS,

AND

An Appendix.

BY

EDWARD JOHNSTON VERNON B.A.

MAGDALENE HALL.

---

Antiquam exquirite Matrem.

---



LONDON:

JOHN RUSSELL SMITH,  
4, OLD COMPTON STREET, SOHO SQUARE.

MDCCCXLVI.

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO



THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

921

V539

1846

TO

JOHN DAVID MACBRIDE ESQ. D.C.J.

Principal of Magdalene Hall,

ETC. ETC.

IN TOKEN OF

RESPECT AND ESTEEM



Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2007 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation

## P R E F A C E.

---

ANGLO-SAXON was spoken by our forefathers in England for more than five hundred years; from it have sprung the greater part of our local and family names, very many of our old, and almost all our provincial words and sayings, and fifteen twentieths of what we daily think, and speak, and write. No Englishman therefore altogether ignorant of Anglo-Saxon can have a thorough knowledge of his own mother-tongue, while the language itself, to say nothing of the many valuable and interesting works preserved in it, may in copiousness of words, strength of expression, and grammatical precision, vie with modern German.\*

The present object is to furnish the learner, if it may be, with a cheaper, easier, more comprehensive, and not less trustworthy guide to this tongue than may hitherto have been within his reach.

The first six chapters are mainly abridged from the Grammar of the late Professor Rask of Copenhagen, as edited by Mr. Thorpe, whom the compiler has to thank for leave to make use of his praiseworthy labours, and for obliging answers to queries.

\* See Thorpe's Advertisement to Rask's Grammar

Some alterations and additions seemed called for by the progress of the study since the publication of that work, whence its improved cultivation in this country must be dated. Illustrations from the kindred new Teutonic dialects German and Dutch, with some from Greek and Latin, old and provincial English &c. have taken the place of the Scandinavian\* references as fitter for the English learner. A view, however narrow and imperfect, of languages more or less nearly akin, can hardly fail, it is hoped, to awaken in the understanding student, a wish to know something more of comparative philology, hitherto so unworthily slighted among ourselves, and so laboriously and skilfully worked out by the Germans.

The hyphen is used throughout to divide the parts of compound words from each other, as also prefixes, and when needful, case-endings and other terminations, from roots; in this as in other tongues, the beginner must accustom himself to parse not only every word in a phrase, but every syllable in a word.

Some rules for gender have been attempted, and a list of exceptions to the general rule of its agreement with the German, together with comparative tables of the cardinal numbers, and of the chief tenses, are added.

The accent, sometimes misplaced or left out by Rask, and too often altogether neglected by others, has been carefully attended to.

\* Some acquaintance with Icelandic and the other old northern tongues, above all Gothic, which shows the originals of the A. S. inflections, quantity &c., is of course needful for a *perfect* knowledge of Anglo-Saxon.

The Syntax is in great part new; the examples mostly gathered from the compiler's own reading.

The Extracts in prose and verse are fitted by explanatory notes for use without a dictionary; an analysis of the narrative verse, partly shortened from Rask, and a literal version of the poetry, are also given. The purpose here being to teach pure Anglo-Saxon only, the selections are all from writers of a good age; one well grounded in the language in its perfect state, will not find it hard to bring down his knowledge of his native tongue, through Semi-Saxon, and old and middle English, to our own time.

The Appendix contains lists of words likely to be confounded by learners, together with a number of additional notes. For the length to which the latter have run some apology may be needed, but it seemed best not to lose the opportunity of bringing in, however irregularly, some matter which may be useful.

To Mr. J. M. Kemble, Editor of *Beowulf* &c., who shares with Mr. Thorpe the honour of making his countrymen independent of foreigners for a right knowledge of their old national language and literature, sincere thanks are due for much very kind, and most valuable help and advice touching the accent, gender, and other hard and weighty points, on which opinions from such an authority cannot be too highly prized. Obliging hints, and the loan of scarce books from other quarters, must also be thankfully acknowledged.

The compiler, feeling what scanty justice has been done to these various and welcome aids, must add that

for those faults both of doing, and of leaving undone, which he cannot hope to have avoided, he alone has to answer. Should this imperfect attempt however, by making the speech of the Anglo-Saxons somewhat easier and more attractive than heretofore to their children, give any of these a better knowledge of the real structure, and true spirit, and a greater love for the power and worth of that tongue, which bids fair one day to overspread the whole earth, some time and labour will not have been spent in vain.

---

# CONTENTS.

---

	PAGE.
Preface . . . . .	v

## CHAPTER I.—LETTERS.

1. Alphabet &c. . . . .	1
2. Accent . . . . .	2
3. Pronunciation . . . . .	3
4. Spelling . . . . .	4
5. Change of Letters . . . . .	5
6. Correspondence of do. . . . .	7

## CHAPTER II.—NOUNS.

1. Genders . . . . .	8
2. Inflection . . . . .	10
3. Simple Order, or Declension I. . . . .	12
4. Complex Order. Declension II. Class 1. . . . .	14
5. — — — — — 2. . . . .	14
6. — — — — — 3. . . . .	16
7. Complex Order. Declension III. Class 1. . . . .	17
8. — — — — — 2. . . . .	18
9. — — — — — 3. . . . .	19

## CHAPTER III.—ADJECTIVES.

1. Inflection . . . . .	20
2. Definite Declension . . . . .	21
3. Indefinite Declension I. . . . .	22
4. — — — — — II. . . . .	23
5. Comparison . . . . .	24
6. Irregular do. . . . .	25

## CHAPTER IV.—PRONOUNS.

	PAGE.
1. Personal . . . . .	27
2. Possessive . . . . .	29
3. Demonstrative . . . . .	30
4. Interrogative . . . . .	31
5. Indefinite . . . . .	32
6. Cardinal Numbers . . . . .	33
7. Ordinal do. . . . .	35

## CHAPTER V.—VERBS.

1. Conjugation . . . . .	37
2. Chief Tenses . . . . .	38
3. Simple Order, or Conjugation I. . . . .	39
4. Conjugation I. Class 1. . . . .	41
5. — — — 2. . . . .	42
6. — — — 3. . . . .	45
7. Complex Order . . . . .	46
8. Conjugation II. Class 1. . . . .	48
9. — — — 2. . . . .	50
10. — — — 3. . . . .	53
11. Conjugation III. . . . .	54
12. Conjugation III. Class 1. . . . .	55
13. — — — 2. . . . .	58
14. — — — 3. . . . .	59
15. Anomalous Verbs . . . . .	60
16. Auxiliaries &c. . . . .	62

## CHAPTER VI.—FORMATION OF WORDS.

1. Prefixes . . . . .	63
2. Nominal Terminations . . . . .	65
3. Adjectival do. . . . .	67
4. Verbal do. . . . .	68
5. Particles . . . . .	69
6. Composition . . . . .	71

## CHAPTER VII.—SYNTAX.

	PAGE.
1. Syntax . . . . .	73
2. Syntax of Nouns . . . . .	74
3. — — Adjectives . . . . .	76
4. — — Verbs . . . . .	78
5. — — Prepositions . . . . .	87
6. — — Conjunctions . . . . .	92
7. — — Interjections . . . . .	96

## CHAPTER VIII.—PROSE EXTRACTS.

1. S. Matthew, XII. 1—13. . . . .	98
2. S. Mark, VI. 32. . . . .	100
3. S. Luke, XX. 9—25. . . . .	104
4. S. John, VII. 14—28. . . . .	107
5. Genesis, XLV. . . . .	109
6. Exodus, XXIII. . . . .	113
7. Saxon Chronicle . . . . .	117
8. Apollonius . . . . .	121
9. Boëthius, XVII., XXXIV. 10. . . . .	129

## CHAPTER IX.—VERSE EXTRACTS.

1. Narrative Verse . . . . .	135
2. Boëthius, Metre XII. . . . .	141
3. Cædmon, parts of Cant. II. and XVI. . . . .	145
4. Beowulf, parts of Cant. V., XXII., XXVII. . . . .	153

## APPENDIX.

1. Words spelt alike, but differing in accent, pronunciation, and meaning . . . . .	162
2. Words spelt and accented alike, but differing in meaning . . . . .	167
3. Other words likely to be confounded by learners . . . . .	174
4. Additional Notes . . . . .	180

## ABBREVIATIONS &c.

---

A. S. Anglo-Saxon.

Comp. compare.

D. Dutch.

F. French.

G. German.

Goth. Gothic.

Gr. Greek.

L. Latin.

lit. literally.

O. old English in general

P. provincial.

S. Scottish, the ancient English dialect of the Lowlands of Scotland, and part of the north of England.

Numbers, applied to a noun, denote the declension and class; to a verb, the conjugation and class; to an adjective, the indefinite declension.

# GUIDE

## TO THE

# ANGLO-SAXON TONGUE.

---

## CHAPTER I.

### SECT. I.—*The Alphabet, &c.*

The A. S. letters are 24, viz.

A	a	[Æ]	N	n
Æ	æ	[Æ]	O	o
B	b		P	p
C	c	[C]	R	r [ʀ]
D	d	[ð]	S	s [ʃ]
E	e	[e]	T	t [t]
F	f	[f]	U	u
G	g	[L ɣ]	W	w [ʃ ʀ ʀ]
H	h	[h ʀ]		x
I	i		Y	y
L	l		þ	þ <i>th</i>
M	m	[m]	ð	ð <i>th</i>

The characters between brackets were written by the Anglo-Saxons, but being for the most part mere corruptions of the Roman forms are now seldom printed.

In later times *k* was used for *c*; *v* and *z* occur in foreign names only. The abbreviations *ȝ* for *and*, *þ* for *þæt*, *the*, *that*, and others were in use; in general — shows that *m* or *n* is left out.

---

## II.—*Accent.*

The accent (') over a vowel shows it to be long. The A. S. accented vowels are mostly long by nature; as, *lár lore* (G. *lehre*), *bær bier* (G. *bahre*), *grén green* (G. *grün*), *wíd wide* (G. *weit*), *g ó d good* (G. *gut*), *r ú m room, space* (G. *raum*), *f ý r fire* (G. *feuer*). Some have become long by contraction, *g*, *h*, *ng*, or *n*, being left out; as, *smeagan*, *smeán to consider*, *sleahan*, *sleán to slay*, *gangan*, *gán to go*, *fangan*, *fón to take*: in *fíf five*, *tóð tooth*, *múð mouth*, and the like, the kindred tongues show the omitted *n*; as, *πεντε*, L. *quinque*, G. *fünf*; *ὀ-δους*, *ὀ-δοντ-ος*, L. *dens*,<sup>(1)</sup> G. *zahn*; G. *mund*: a few from the omission of a vowel; as, *tae*, *tá toe*. From the examples above and below, it will be seen that in English a long or double vowel, and in German a long or double vowel, or diphthong, commonly answers to an A. S. long or accented vowel, while short vowels in general correspond in like manner. The accent serves at the same time, though never used for that purpose merely, to distinguish many words of like spelling but different meaning and sound; as, *ac but*, *ác oak*; *mæst mast*, *mæst most*; *wende turned*, *went*, *wénde weened*; *is is*, *ís ice*; *for for*, *fór journey*; *ful full*,

(1) In A. S. as in Greek, *ns* does not occur in the same syllable.

fúl *foul*; hyrde *herd, keeper*, hýrde *heard*.<sup>(2)</sup> Without due attention therefore to the accent, A. S. cannot be rightly written, pronounced, nor understood.<sup>(3)</sup>

### III.—*Pronunciation.*

The pronunciation is as follows:—

a has the sound of our *a* in *ah*; F. &c. short *a*.

á is longer and broader, like G. &c. long *a*, approaching our *au* and *aw*.

au and aw sound nearly like *ow* in *now*, but more open, like G. and Italian *au*.

æ is pronounced like *a* in *glad*.

æ nearly as *a* in *dare*; G. *eh*; F. close *é*.

e sounds like *e* in *send*, *rather*, when thus placed; before a consonant followed by a vowel it resembles the *ea* in *bear*, but is shorter, like F. open *è*. Before a or o it sounds as *y*; at the end of a syllable it is very lightly sounded, like the F. unaccented *e*, or the G. *e* final.

é is pronounced like *æ*.

i and y answer to *i* in *dim*.

i before another vowel to *y*.

í an *dý* to *ee* in *deem*.

o to short *o* in *not*; F. open *o*.

ó to long *o* in *note*; F. close *ó*.

ow is sounded as *ow* in *now*.

<sup>(2)</sup> Comp. G. *mast, meist; wandte, währte; ist, eis; für, fuhr; voll, faul; hirt, hörte*.

<sup>(3)</sup> The more advanced student will find comparison with the Gothic and other ancient dialects the only sure guide to the A. S. quantity.

u as *u* in *full*.

ú as *oo* in *fool*.

The consonants are pronounced as in English, with the following exceptions :—

c is always hard like *k*; *cw* stands for *qu*, which was however used in later times.

f between two vowels, or at the end of a syllable, sounds like *v*.

g is never soft; when placed however between two of the vowels æ, e, i, or y, or at the beginning of a syllable before e or i, followed by another vowel, it has the sound of *y*.<sup>(1)</sup>

cg is usually written for *gg*.

h is always strongly aspirated; at the end of a syllable or before a hard consonant it is guttural, like the G. *ch*, the S. *ch* in *loch*, and the Irish *gh* in *lough*.

hw answers to our *wh*; h occurs also before *l*, *n* and *r*.

w sometimes, as in E., stands before *r*; likewise before *l*.

þ (*tha*) is our hard *th*, as in *thing*.

ð (*eth*) our soft *th*, as in *other*.

þ usually begins, ð ends a syllable, but they were and are often confounded.

#### IV.—*Spelling*.

The A. S. spelling was very variable; the following are the commonest changes :—

<sup>1</sup> It is likely that g before e or i, and (like h) at the end of a syllable, was guttural, as it often is in German, and always in Dutch.

á — æ and æ — á; þám, þæm; þære, þære.

a — ea; waldan, wealdan *to wield, rule*.

a — o and o — a; man, mon <sup>(2)</sup> *man*; on, an *on*.

ea — e and e — a; ceaster, cester <sup>(3)</sup> *town*; fela, feala *many*; eá — é; teáh, téh *drew*.

i — y, eo; hit, hyt *it*: him, heom *them*.

í — ý, íe, eó; hí, hý, hie, heó *they*.

eo — u, y, e; sweord, swurd *sword*; seolf, sylf, self *self*.

eó — ú, ý; sweótol, swútol, swýtol *manifest*.

g — h; sorg, sorh *care, sorrow*.

ng, nc, nge; sang, sanc, sange *song*: n and g are often transposed, &c.; þegen, þegn, þeng, þen *servant,thane*: g is sometimes added or cast off at the end of a word; as, hwý, hwýg *why?* hefig, hefi *heavy*: it is often left out before d or ð; mægden, mæden *maiden*, mægð, mæð *tribe*.

cs, sc, hs, x; ácsian, áscian, áhsian, áxian *to ask (ax)*. <sup>(4)</sup>

### V.—Change of Letters.

Other changes of letters take place in inflection and derivation; the German synonyms often undergo the like, the English sometimes.

a is changed into æ, and *vice versá*; grafan *to grave*, (G. graben); þú græfst *thou gravest*, (G. du gräbst);

<sup>(2)</sup> P. *mon* for *man*, *lang* for *long*, and the like.

<sup>(3)</sup> L. *castra*; hence *Chester*, -*cester*, &c. in local names.

<sup>(4)</sup> See also nouns II. 2., and irregular comparison.

bæð *bath*, (G. bad); baðu *baths* (G. bäder.)<sup>(1)</sup>

a into e; man, *man* (G. mann); men<sup>(2)</sup> *men* (G. männer).

á into æ; hál *hale, whole*, ge-hælan *to heal*.

ea into e or y; neah *nigh*, nehst nyhst *nighest, next*.

e, o, eo, u into i or y; ren *rain*, rinan *to rain*; storm *storm* (G. sturm); styrman *to storm* (G. stürmen); weorc *work* (G. werk), wyrcean *to work* (G. wirken); hunger *hunger*, hyngrian *to hunger*.

eá, eó, ú, into ý; leás *loose*, (G. los); a-lýsan *to re-lease* (G. er-lösen); neód *need* (G. noth); nýðan *to force* (G. nöthigen); scrúd *shroud*, scrýðan *to shroud*.

ó into é; dóm *doom*, déman *to deem, doom*.

bb into f; a-hebban *to exalt*, a-hafen *exalted* <sup>(4)</sup>.

c and cc into h; sécan *to seek*, ic sóhte *I sought*; feccan *to fetch*, (ge-)freht *fretcht* <sup>(5)</sup>.

g into h and *vice versa*; wrígan *to cover*, ic wráh *I covered*; beorh *mountain*, plur. beorgas<sup>(6)</sup>.

s into r<sup>(7)</sup>; freósan *to freeze*, (ge-)frozen *frozen*.

ð into d<sup>(8)</sup>; sníðan *to cut* (G. schneiden), sniden *cut* (G. ge-schnitten).

Several other changes take place in the formation of imperfects I. 3. and complex; likewise in nouns II. 2., III. 1. 3. and in adjectives.

(1) See Verbs II. 3., and Nouns III. 1.

(2) See Nouns III. 2.

(3) See irregular comparison.

(4) See Verbs II. 3.

(5) See Verbs I. 2, 3.

(6) See Verbs III. 1, 2. Nouns II. 2.

(7) See Verbs III. 3.

(8) See Verbs II, 1, and III. 2.

VI.—*Correspondence of Letters.*

Attention to the correspondence of A. S. with English and German letters helps not only to recognise words already known in a kindred tongue, but to settle their derivation, spelling, and quantity. Thus—

á answers to E. long o; G. ei, l. e; bān<sup>(9)</sup> *bone*, G. bein; máre<sup>(10)</sup> *more, greater*, G. mehr.

eá to E. l. e; G. l. o, a, au: streám *stream*, G. strom; sceáp *sheep*, G. schaf; ge-leáfa *be-lief*, G. g-laube.

ea to E. short a, l. o; G. s. a: scearp *sharp*, G. scharf; ceald *cold*, G. kalt.

æ to E. and G. a, e: gæst *guest*, G. gast; fæst *fast*, G. fest.

æ to E. l. e, a, o; G. l. a, ei: sæd *seed*, G. saat; hær *hair*, G. haar; mæst<sup>(11)</sup> *most*, G. meist.

é to E. l. e; G. l. ü, ä: céne *bold, keen*, G. kühn; wénan *to ween, imagine*, G. wännen.

í to E. l. i; G. ei: síde *side*, G. seite.

eo to E. a, o, u, e; G. e, ie: deorc *dark*, sweord *sword*, G. schwert; ceorl *churl*, G. kerl; feoll *fell*, G. fiel.

ó to E. oo; G. l. u: flór *floor*, G. flur.

eó, eów to E. l. e; G. l. ie, eu: deóp *deep*, G. tief; deor *dear*, G. theuer; cneów *knee*, G. knie.

ú to E. ou, ow, oo; G. l. au, u: mús *mouse*, G. maus; cú *cow*, G. kuh; rúm *room, space*, G. raum.

(<sup>9</sup>) S. bane.

(<sup>10</sup>) S. mair.

(<sup>11</sup>) S. maist.

ý to E. l. i, e; G. l. eu, au, ö: fýr *fire*, G. feuer;  
brýd *bride*, G. braut; hýran *to hear*, G. hören.

c (before a soft vowel) to E. and G. ch, k: cyle *chill*,  
G. kühle; stician *to stick*, G. stechen.

cc to E. tch, ck; G. ck: streccan *to stretch*, G.  
strecken; liccian *to lick*, G. lecken.

sc to E. sh, sk; G. sch: scyld *shield*, G. schild; disc  
*dish, table*, G. tisch; tusc *tusk*.

g (before a soft vowel sometimes) to E. y, G. j: gear  
*year*, G. jahr; girstan-dæg *yester-day*.

r and s are often transposed: forst *frost*, G. frost:  
bridd (*young*) *bird*; flacse *flask*, G. flasche.

## CHAPTER II.

### I.—Nouns. Gender.

The genders, as in Greek, Latin, German, &c. are three, viz. neuter, masculine, feminine; the first two, as in those tongues, closely resembling each other, the last differing widely from both. A. S. nouns in general agree in gender with the corresponding German; as,

Neuter:	{ wíf	G. weib <i>woman, wife</i> .
	{ cild	G. kind <i>child</i> .

Masculine:	mona	G. mond <i>moon</i> .
------------	------	-----------------------

Feminine:	sunne	G. sonne <i>sun</i> .
-----------	-------	-----------------------

The chief exceptions are:—

Neut. eár	G. ähre	(f.) <i>ear of corn</i> .
— fæsten	G. feste	(f.) <i>fastness</i> .
— fyðer	G. feder	(f.) <i>feather, wing</i> .

Neut. mód	G. muth	(m.)	<i>mind, mood.</i>
— twig	G. zweig	(m.)	<i>twig.</i>
— wæpen	G. waffe	(f.)	<i>weapon.</i>
— wésten	G. wüste	(f.)	<i>waste, desert.</i>
— wín <sup>(1)</sup>	G. wein	(m.)	<i>wine.</i>
Masc. cræft	G. kraft	(f.)	<i>power, craft, art.</i>
— ende	G. ende	(n.)	<i>end.</i>
— feld	G. feld	(n.)	<i>field.</i>
— here	G. heer	(n.)	<i>army.</i>
— lust	G. lust	(f.)	<i>lust, pleasure.</i>
— mere <sup>(2)</sup>	G. meer	(n.)	<i>mere, lake, sea.</i>
Fem. bók	G. buch	(n.)	<i>book.</i>
— hælu <sup>(3)</sup>	G. heil	(m.)	<i>health, salvation.</i>
— heorte <sup>(4)</sup>	G. herz	(n.)	<i>heart.</i>
— ge-sýhđ	G. ge-sicht	(n.)	<i>sight.</i>
— turf	G. torf	(n.)	<i>turf.</i>
— wiht	G. wicht	(m.)	<i>wight, being.</i>

Moreover, all A. S. nouns ending in -dóm, -hád, and -scipe are masculine, while G. nouns in -thum are some neuter, some masculine, in -heit and -schaft feminine; A. S. in -nes (-nys, -nis) feminine, G. in -niss some neuter, some feminine.

Some words are of more than one gender; thus flód<sup>(5)</sup> *flood* is neut. (II. 1.) and masc. (II. 2.); sáe *sea* masc. (II. 2.) and fem. (I. 3.); bend *band, bond* masc. (II. 2.) and fem. (II. 3.); lác *gift, office, &c.* all three (II. 1. 2. 3.), but oftenest neuter.

(<sup>1</sup>) Οἶν-ος masc. L. vin-um, neut.

(<sup>2</sup>) L. mare, neut.

(<sup>3</sup>) L. sal-us, fem.

(<sup>4</sup>) Kapδ-ια fem. L. cor, neut.

(<sup>5</sup>) G. fluth fem.; see masc. and fem.; band neut. and masc.

## FURTHER RULES FOR GENDER.

I. Nouns ending in -tl, -ed, -incle, and diminutives in -en; likewise all having the nominative and accusative alike in both numbers are neuter.

II. Nouns in -a, -m, -ls, -að, -oð, -e (from verbs) and -ling; likewise all forming the genitive singular in -a, or the nominative plural in -as are masculine.

III. Nouns in -æð, -uð, -ð (after a consonant) -eo, -u (of quality from adjectives) -e (from adjectives) -ung, and -leást are feminine.

IV. The gender of compound words depends on that of the last part; thus wíf-man *woman* is masculine. <sup>(1)</sup>

## II.—Declension.

Nouns are divided into two Orders, the Simple and the Complex; <sup>(2)</sup> the former having one Declension of three Classes for the three Genders, the latter two Declensions of three Classes each <sup>(3)</sup>.

The Simple Order, answering to the Greek and Latin pure nouns, contains those ending in an essential vowel; viz. -e in the neuter, -a in the masculine, and -e in the feminine. The Complex Order, answering to the Gr. and L. impure nouns, comprises all ending in a consonant, together with some in an unessential -e or -u.

(1) By the same rule G. frauen-zimmer *female* is neut.; manns-person *man* fem.

(2) In Grimm's system Simple Nouns are called weak; Complex, strong.

(3) For the grounds of this division, see Rask's Grammar, pp. 26—30.

*Table of the Inflection of Nouns.*

SIMPLE ORDER.

DECLENSION I.

	I. Neut.	II. Masc.	III. Fem.
	SINGULAR.		
Nom.	-e	-a	-e
Accus. (4)	-e	-an	-an
Abl. & Dat.	-an	-an	-an
Gen.	-an	-an	-an
	PLURAL.		
Nom. & Acc.	-an		
Abl. & Dat.	-um		
Gen.	-ena		

COMPLEX ORDER.

DECLENSION II.

DECLENSION III.

	I. Neut.	II. Masc.	III. Fem.	I. Neut.	II. Masc.	III. Fem.
	SINGULAR.			SINGULAR.		
Nom.	—	— (-e)	—	— (-e)	-u	-u
Accus.	—	— (-e)	-e	— (-e)	-u	-e
A. & D.	-e	-e	-e	-e	-a	-e
Gen.	-es	-es	-e	-es	-a	-e
	PLURAL.			PLURAL.		
N. & A.	—	-as	-a	-u	-a	-a
A. & D.	-um	-um	-um	-um	-um	-um
Gen.	-a	-a	-a(-ena)	-a	-a	-a(-ena)

(4) On this arrangement see Rask, Preface p. 54.

## RULES FOR DECLENSION.

I. All Nouns have the nominative and accusative alike in the plural.

II. All Nouns form the ablative and dative plural in -um, often changed to -on, and sometimes again to -an.

III. The ablative and dative are always alike in each number.

IV. Neuters, as in Greek, Latin, and German, have the nominative and accusative alike in each number.

V. Feminines vary the nominative and accusative singular ; but form the ablative, dative, and genitive singular alike.

VI. The Simple Order forms its genitive plural in -ena, the Complex in -a. <sup>(1)</sup>

### III.—*Simple Order, or Declension I.*

The First Declension contains a few neuters ending in -e, all masculines in -a, and all feminines in -e ; the nominative plural is formed in -an <sup>(2)</sup>. The three Classes are so much alike that they may be shown at one view.

<sup>(1)</sup> Participial nouns form it in -ra (see II. 2.) like indefinite adjectives. Complex feminines (II. 3. and III. 3.) sometimes have a Simple gen. plural.

<sup>(2)</sup> G. nouns forming their plur. in -en (-n) are Simple, all others Complex.

Examples—*eáge eye, steorra star, tunge tongue.*

	CLASS I.	CLASS II.	CLASS III.
		SINGULAR.	
	Neuter.	Masculine.	Feminine.
Nom.	<i>eág-e</i>	<i>steorr-a</i>	<i>tung-e</i>
Accus.	<i>eág-e</i>	<i>steorr-an</i>	<i>tung-an</i>
Abl. & Dat.	<i>eág-an</i>	<i>steorr-an</i>	<i>tung-an</i>
Gen.	<i>eág-an</i>	<i>steorr-an</i>	<i>tung-an</i>
		PLURAL.	
N. & Acc.	<i>eág-an</i>	<i>steorr-an</i>	<i>tung-an</i>
Abl. & Dat.	<i>eág-um</i>	<i>steorr-um</i>	<i>tung-um</i>
Gen.	<i>eág-ena</i>	<i>steorr-ena</i>	<i>tung-ena.</i>

In like manner are declined *eáre ear, clíwe clew; hearra lord, guma man, wyrhta wright, workmán, tíma time, draca dragon, hlísa fame; hlæfdige lady, cirice (circe) church, wuce week, eorðe earth, wíse wise, way<sup>(2)</sup> &c.* Also some contracted nouns; *as, freá lord (masc.) tá toe, beó<sup>(3)</sup> bee (fem.),* making *freán &c. plural tán, táum, taena; beón, beóna &c. Æ' law, sæseu<sup>(4)</sup>,* and *eá river (likewise fem.)* are indeclinable, except sometimes gen. *eás<sup>(5)</sup>, nom. plural eán.*

(<sup>2</sup>) *Manna man* and *heofone heaven* are much less common than *man* III. 2. and *heofon* II. 2.

(<sup>3</sup>) *G. zehe, biene*, not contracted.

(<sup>4</sup>) *Sæ* is also declinable, as II. 2.

(<sup>5</sup>) All A. S. nouns originally formed the genitive in *-s*; see p. 70, n. 4.

## IV.—Complex Order. Declension II.

## CLASS I.

The Second Declension, first Class, contains many neuters ending in one or more consonants.

Examples—*leáf leaf, word word.*

SINGULAR.		
Nom. & Acc.	<i>leáf</i>	<i>word</i>
Abl. & Dat.	<i>leáf-e</i>	<i>word-e</i>
Gen.	<i>leáf-es</i>	<i>word-es</i>

PLURAL.		
Nom. & Acc.	<i>leáf</i>	<i>word</i>
Abl. & Dat.	<i>leáf-um</i>	<i>word-um</i>
Gen.	<i>leáf-a</i>	<i>word-a.</i>

Thus are declined *eár ear of corn, hús house, deór* <sup>(1)</sup> *beast, ge-hát promise, hors horse, spel story, spell, wíf woman, wife, bearn child, bairn, lamb lamb &c.; feoh* <sup>(2)</sup> *fee, money, cattle makes feo, feos.*

## V.—CLASS II.

The Second Declension, second Class, comprises all regular masculines ending in a consonant, all complex ones in -e, and a few in -u (-o); the plural is formed in -as; some monosyllables change æ to a in the plural.

(1) Hence *deer*—"Rats and mice, and such small *deer*."

(2) Comp. L. *pec-us, pec-unia*; our *fee* is *money* only, G. *vieh cattle* only.

Examples—*dæl part, deal, ende end, dæg day.*

SINGULAR.

N. & A. <i>dæl</i>	<i>end-e</i>	<i>dæg</i>
A. & D. <i>dæl-e</i>	<i>end-e</i>	<i>dæg</i>
Gen. <i>dæl-es</i>	<i>end-es</i>	<i>dæg-es</i>

PLURAL.

N. & A. <i>dæl-as</i>	<i>end-as</i>	<i>dag-as</i>
A. & D. <i>dæl-um</i>	<i>end-um</i>	<i>dag-um</i>
Gen. <i>dæl-a</i>	<i>end-a</i>	<i>dag-a.</i>

Thus also *cyning (cing) king, smið smith, stán stone, weg way, freo-dóm freedom, munuc-hád monkhood; mete meat, rædere reader, weorðscipe worship; stæf<sup>(2)</sup> staff, letter, mæg kinsman, &c.* Participial nouns in *-end* usually have the nominative and accusative sing. and plur. alike, and make *-ra* in the gen. plural. *Freónd friend*, and *feónd foe, fiend* have plur. *frýnd, fýnd, freónd, feónd, or freóndas &c.* Dissyllables in *-el (-ol), -en (-on), and -er (-or)* are contracted in the oblique cases and plural; thus *engel angel, dryhten lord, ealdor prince*, make *engle, engles, englas &c. dryhtne &c.* *Heofen (-on) heaven* has abl. and dat. *heofene, heofone, or heofne* and so on. *Monað (mond) month* forms *monðe &c.* *Winter winter* has abl. and dat. *wintra*, nom. pl. *wintras*, or *winter*. *Feld field, ford ford*, and *sumer (-or) summer* make abl. and dat. *felda, forda, sumera.*

(<sup>2</sup>) Comp. G. *stab, stäbe*; &c. G. *buch-stab* is *letter*.

Fæder *father* is seldom varied in the singular, and never contracted. Nouns in -h, and -u (-o), change them to g and w; as, beáh *ring*, beáge, beáges &c.; bealu *bale, injury*, bealwe, and the like: a few drop the -h; as, feorh *life*, feore &c. Those in sc often take x (cs) in the plural; as, fisc *fish*, fixas &c.; sometimes throughout; fix, fixe &c.

## VI.—CLASS III.

The Second Declension, third Class, contains all regular feminines ending in a consonant; the plural is formed in -a.

Examples—stefen (stefn) *voice*, spræc *speech*.

### SINGULAR.

Nom.	stefen	spræc
Acc.	stefn-e	spræc-e
A. & D.	stefn-e	spræc-e
Gen.	stefn-e	spræc-e

### PLURAL.

N. & A.	stefn-a	spræc-a
A. & D.	stefn-um	spræc-um
Gen.	stefn-a(-ena)	spræc-a(-ena).

Thus are declined sáwel *soul*, wylen *female slave*, frófer *comfort*, ge-samnung *assembly*, écnys *eternity*, lág *law*, stów *place*, peód *people*, lár *lore*, myrð *mirth*, bén *prayer*, &c. Dissyllables in -el (-ol), -en, -er (-or), are contracted in the oblique cases, and often in all; as, sáwl, wyln, frófr. A single final consonant after a

short vowel is doubled; as syn *sin*, accus. &c. synne. The gen. plur. is sometimes in -ena. Nouns in -ung sometimes form the abl. and dat. in -a. Hand *hand*, makes accus. hand, abl. and dat. handa. Miht *might*, tíd *time*, *tide*, woruld *world*, have the accus. like the nom.; woruld sometimes makes gen. worldes.<sup>(1)</sup> Niht *night*, and wiht *wight* remain unchanged in the accus. singular, and nom. plural.

## VII.—Declension III.

## CLASS I.

The Third Declension, first Class, contains all complex neuters in -e, all in -u, all neuter dissyllables in er (-or), -el (-ol), and -en, some in ed (-od), and many monosyllables in a consonant. The plural is in -u (-o), often changed to -a; some monosyllables change æ, and a few ea, into a in the plural.

Examples—treów *tree*, ríce *realm*, fæt *vat*, vessel.

## SINGULAR.

N. & A.	treów	ric-e	fæt
A. & D.	treów-e	ric-e	fæt-e
Gen.	treów-es	ric-es	fæt-es

## PLURAL.

N. & A.	treów-u	ric-u	fat-u
A. & D.	treów-um	ric-um	fat-um
Gen.	treów-a	ric-a	fat-a.

<sup>(1)</sup> See page 13, n. 5 above.

So likewise *scip ship*, *lim limb*, *deófol*<sup>(1)</sup> *devil*, *wæter water*, *ge-writ writing*, *writ*; *wíte punishment*, *ge-mære boundary*, *spere spear*, *melu meal*, *flour*; *bæð bath*, *glæs* <sup>(2)</sup> *glass*, *geat gate*, &c.

Dissyllables are mostly contracted; thus, *heáfod head*, *tácen token*, *wunder wonder*, make *heáfde*, *heáfdes* &c. *tácne*, *wundre* &c.; *nýten beast*, *neat*, *weofod altar*, &c. are usually not. Those in *-en* sometimes double the *n* in the oblique cases; as, *wésten desert*, *wéstenne* &c. *Cild child*, *cealf calf*, and *æg egg*, form their plural *cildru (-a)* <sup>(3)</sup>, *cealfu*, *ægru*; the first however often has *cild* or *cilde*. *þýstru darkness*, *lendenu loins*, &c. have no singular. Nouns in *-u* take *w*, and are usually contracted, forming the plural in *-a*; as, *searu array*, *ambush*, *searwe*, *searwes*; plur. *searwa* &c.

---

## VIII.—CLASS II.

The Third Declension, second Class, comprises masculines in *-u (-o)*, forming their plural in *-a*, some irregulars (masc. and fem.) in *-er (-or)*, changing their vowel in the ablative and dative, and making *-u (-o, -a)* in the plural, a few (masc.) changing their vowel as above, and in the nominative and accusative plural, &c.

<sup>(1)</sup> *Deófol* is often masculine.

<sup>(2)</sup> Comp. G. *fass*, *fässer*; *glas*, *gläser*.

<sup>(3)</sup> Hence *childr-en*, P. *child-er*; comp. G. *kind*, *kind-er*; *kalb*, *kälb-er*; *ei*, *ei-er*: D. *kind*, *kind-er-en*; *kalf*, *kalv-er-en*; *ei*, *eij-er-en*.

Examples—*sunu son, bróðer brother, man man.*

## SINGULAR.

N. & A.	<i>sun-u</i>	<i>bróðer</i>	<i>man</i>
A. & D.	<i>sun-a</i>	<i>bréðer</i>	<i>men</i>
Gen.	<i>sun-a</i>	<i>bróðer</i>	<i>mann-e</i>

## PLURAL.

N. & A.	<i>sun-a</i>	<i>bróðr-u</i>	<i>men</i>
A. & D.	<i>sun-um</i>	<i>bróðr-um</i>	<i>mann-um</i>
Gen.	<i>sun-a</i>	<i>bróðr-u</i>	<i>mann-a.</i>

So too are declined *wudu wood, sidu custom, medo mead, metheglin; móder mother, dóhter daughter, sweoster sister: fót foot, and tóð tooth*, follow *man*<sup>2</sup> making *fét, téð*. (5) *Sun-ena* is rare.

*Leóde* (G. *leute*) *people*, *Dene Danes*, *Engle Angles, Englishmen*, and a few more in *-e* with no singular, make *leódum, leóda, &c.*

## IX.—CLASS III.

The Third Declension, third Class, contains all feminines ending in *-u* or *-o*, also some irregulars which change their vowel, &c. The former sometimes make the genitive plural in *-ena*.

Examples—*denu vale, bók book, burh burgh, town.*

## SINGULAR.

Nom.	<i>den-u</i>	}	<i>bók</i>	<i>burh</i>
Acc.	<i>den-e</i>			
A. & D.	<i>den-e</i>		<i>béc</i>	<i>byrig</i>
Gen.	<i>den-e</i>		<i>béc</i>	<i>burg-e</i>

(5) Comp. G. *mann, männer; fuss, füsse; zahn, zähne.*

	PLURAL.	
N. & A. den-a	béc	byrig
A. & D. den-um	bóc-um	burg-um
Gen. den-a (-ena)	bóc-a	burg-a.

Like *denu* are declined *lufu love*, *gifu gift, grace*, *snóru daughter-in-law*, *caru care*, *lagu water*, &c. *Mænigeo (-u) many, multitude*, *yldo age, eld*, *brædo breadth*, and some others in-o are indeclinable, except abl. and dat. plur. *mænigum*. *Duru door* makes abl. and dat. sing. *dura*. Collectives in -waru, as *burh-waru town's-folk*, form plur. -ware, gen. -wara or -warena. *Mús mouse*, *lús louse*, *cú cow*, *gós goose*, *bróc breeches*, follow *bóc*, making plur. *mýs mice*, *lýs lice*, *cý kye*, *gés*<sup>(1)</sup> *geese*, *bréc*. *Cú* sometimes has gen. sing. *cús*,<sup>(2)</sup> gen. plur. *cúna*. *Turf turf*, and *furh furrow*, follow *burh*, making *tyrf*, &c.

## CHAPTER III.

### I.—Adjectives

As in German &c. have a Definite and an Indefinite inflection: the former is used when the adjective is preceded by the definite article, by any other demonstrative, or by a possessive pronoun; the latter always else. There are three Declensions, one for the Definite form, agreeing closely with the Simple Order, two for the In-

(1) Comp. G. buch, Bücher; maus, mäuse; laus, läuse; kuh, kühe; gans, gänse.

(2) See page 70, n. 4.

definite, answering, though not so exactly, to the Complex Order of Nouns.

## II.—*Definite Declension.*

Example—(*gód good*) þæt gód-e<sup>(3)</sup> &c. *the good*.

SINGULAR.		
Neut.	Masc.	Fem.
Nom. þæt gód-e	se gód-a	seó gód-e
Acc. þæt gód-e	þone gód-an	þá gód-an
<hr/>		
Abl. þý gód-an		þý gód-an
Dat. þám gód-an		þære gód-an
Gen. þæs gód-an		þære gód-an
<hr/>		
PLURAL.		
N. & A. þa gód-an		
A. & D. þám gód-um		
Gen. þára gód-ena.		

This declension is used for all adjectives, participles, and pronouns in general; participles present however take -ra instead of -ena in the genitive plural. Monosyllables commonly change æ to a throughout; as, smæl *small*, þæt smale, se smala, seó smale *the small*, and so on. Adjectives in -h, as heáh *high*, usually change it to g when the case-ending is a vowel, as, þæt heág-e, &c.; otherwise the h is dropt; as, abl. &c. heán. Those in -u (-o), as near-u *narrow*, take w throughout; as, þæt near-we, &c.<sup>(4)</sup>

(3) Comp. Nouns I. 1, 2, 3.

(4) Comp. Nouns II. 2, 3. III. 1.

III.—*Indefinite Declension I.*Example—*gód*<sup>(1)</sup> *good*.

SINGULAR.			
	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.
Nom.	<i>gód</i>	<i>gód</i>	<i>gód</i>
Acc.	<i>gód</i>	<i>gód-ne</i>	<i>gód-e</i>
	Abl.	<i>gód-e</i>	<i>gód-e</i>
	Dat.	<i>gód-um</i>	<i>gód-re</i>
	Gen.	<i>gód-es</i>	<i>gód-re</i>
PLURAL.			
	Neut.	Masc. & Fem.	
N. & A.	<i>gód(-u)</i>	<i>gód-e</i>	
A. & D.		<i>gód-um</i>	
Gen.		<i>gód-ra.</i>	

Thus are declined adjectives ending in -e, -el (-ol), -isc, and -wís; likewise most monosyllables, all participles present, participles past of the Simple Order, superlatives and pronouns; as, *wyrð-e* *worth, worthy*, *dýg-el* *dark*, *sprec-ol* *talkative*, *menn-isc* *human*, *ge-wís* *sure*, *sóð* *true*, *sooth*, *leóht* *light*, *heard* *hard*, *seóc* *sick*, *wrec* *wretched*, *fæst* *fast*, &c.

Those in -e drop it when a syllable of inflection is added; *wyrð-ne*, *wyrð-um*, *wyrð-re*, &c.

Adjectives in -h and -u follow the rules given above; accus. masc. *heá-nne*, *nearo-ne*; abl. &c. fem. *heá-re*, *near-we* or *near-e*; gen. plur. *heá-ra*, *near-wa* or *near-a*.

(<sup>1</sup>) Comp. Nouns II. 1, 2.

## IV.—Indefinite Declension II.

Example—smæl<sup>(2)</sup> *small*.

## SINGULAR.

	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.
Nom.	smæl	s mæl	smal-u
Acc.	smæl	smæl-ne	smal-e
	Abl. smal-e		smale
	Dat. smal-um		smæl-re
	Gen. smal-es		smæl-re

## PLURAL.

	Neut.	Masc. & Fem.
N. & A.	smal-u	smal-e
A. & D.	smal-um	
Gen.	smæl-ra.	

Thus are declined monosyllables with æ (except fæst) &c., most adjectives with derived endings, and participles past of the Complex Order; some of both the latter, however, follow Declension I. As, læt *late, slow*, swær *heavy*, glæd *glad*, bær *bare*, swæs *sweet, dear*, til *good*, eád-ig *blessed, prosperous*, fær-líc *sudden, dangerous*, ge-sib-sum *peaceable*, mæg-er *meagre*, hlutt-or-clear, fæg-en *glad, fain*. Some dissyllables are contracted in certain forms, as, hál-ig *holy*, hál-ge, hál-ges, &c., but gen. plur. hál-igra and the like.

(1) Comp. Nouns III. 1, 3.

V.—*Comparison.*

The Comparative and Superlative Degrees are regularly formed by adding -or and -ost (<sup>(1)</sup>), (E. and G. -er and -est), to the indefinite form; as, leóf, leóf-or, leóf-ost *dear, dear-er, dear-est* (G. lieb, lieb-er, lieb-est): æ usually becomes a; as, smæl, smæl-or, smæl-ost, *small, small-er, small-est*. (G. schmal, schmal-er, schmal-est.) The ending -or is however only adverbial; as an adjective the Comparative is formed in -re, -ra, -re, whether used definitely or indefinitely; as, (þæt) leóf-re, (se) leóf-ra, (seó) leóf-re (*the dearer*); (G. das &c. lieb-re) (þæt) smæl-re &c. (*the smaller*); (G. das &c. schmal-re). The Superlative has both the definite and indefinite inflections, the former in -ost, or -est, (also the adverbial form), the latter in -oste, -osta, -oste, or -este &c.; as, leóf-ost *dearest*, þæt leóf-oste, or leóf-este &c. *the dearest*; (G. das &c. lieb-ste.)

## TABLE OF COMPARISON.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE. Adjective.	SUPERLATIVE.
heard	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{(þæt) heard-re} \\ \text{(the) hard-er} \end{array} \right.$	heard-ost
hard		hard-est
þæt heard-e		þæt heard-oste
the hard		the hard-est
	Adverb.	
heard-e	heard-or	heard-ost
hard-ly	hard-li-er	hard-li-est.

(<sup>1</sup>) Comp. the L. comparative -ior; Gr. superlative *ιστ-ος*, &c.

VI.—*Irregular Comparison.*

The following adjectives are irregularly compared; the change of a into e; æ into a; eá into ý, or é; ea, eo, u, into y, answers to that of the German a into ä, o into ö, u into ü: in English but few traces of this remain. The forms in -me <sup>(2)</sup> (-ma, -me) are old superlatives, afterwards used as positives, and then again compared. The words between brackets are adverbs, peculiarly formed.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
lang <sup>(3)</sup>	lengre (leng)	lengest
<i>long</i>	<i>longer</i>	<i>longest</i>
strang	strengre (strangor)	strengest
<i>strong</i>	<i>stronger</i>	<i>strongest</i>
hræd (hraðe)	hræðre (hraðor)	hraðost
<i>quick, rath</i>	<i>quicker (rather)</i>	<i>quickest</i>
eald	yldre	yldest
<i>old</i>	<i>elder</i>	<i>eldest</i>
neah	nearre (near, nyr)	nyhst, nehst, next
<i>nigh</i>	<i>nigher</i>	<i>nighest, next</i>
heáh	hýrre	hýhst, héhst
<i>high</i>	<i>higher</i>	<i>highest</i>
eáð	eáðre (éðre, éð)	eáðost
<i>easy</i>	<i>easier</i>	<i>easiest</i>
feor	fyrre (fyr)	fyrrest
<i>far</i>	<i>further</i>	<i>furthest</i>
geong	gyngre	gyngest
<i>young</i>	<i>younger</i>	<i>youngest</i>

<sup>(2)</sup> Comp. L. superlatives in -mum (-mus, -ma).

<sup>(3)</sup> Comp. G. lang, länger, längst; alt, älter, ältest; nahe, näher, nächst; hoch, höher, höchst; jung, jünger, jüngst; fort, fürter; sanft, sänfter, sänftest; eher, erst; gut, wohi, besser, best; mehr, meist, &c.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
sceort	scyrtre	scyrtest
<i>short</i>	<i>shorter</i>	<i>shortest</i>
(ford̄, furd̄)	furd̄re (furd̄or)	
( <i>forth</i> )	<i>further</i>	
sóft	séftre (séft)	séftest
<i>soft</i>	<i>softer</i>	<i>softest</i>
ær (¹)	ærre (ærer, -or)	ærest (-ost)
<i>early (ere)</i>	<i>earlier, sooner</i>	( <i>erst</i> ) <i>first</i>
gód (wel)	betere (bet)	betest, betst
<i>good (well)</i>	<i>better</i>	<i>best</i>
yfel	wyrse (wyr̄s)	wyrrest, wyr̄st
<i>evil</i>	<i>worse</i>	<i>worst</i>
micel	máre (má) (²)	máest
<i>great, mickle</i>	<i>greater, more</i>	<i>greatest, most</i>
lytel (lyt)	læsse (læs)	læst
<i>little</i>	<i>less</i>	<i>least</i>
forme (fore)		fyr̄mest, fyr̄st
<i>former, fore</i>		<i>foremost, first</i>
læt, læteme (late)	lætre (lator)	latost, lætemest
<i>late, slow</i>	<i>later, latter</i>	<i>latest, last</i>
síd̄, síðeme	síðre (síðor)	síðost, síðemest
<i>late, (since)</i>		
nord̄eme, (nord̄) (³)	(nord̄or)	nord̄emest
<i>northern, north</i>		<i>northmost</i>
úfeme (úp)	úfere (úfor)	ýfemest
<i>high (up)</i>	<i>upper</i>	<i>upmost</i>
æfteme (æfter)	æftre	æftemest
<i>aft, after</i>	<i>after</i>	<i>aftmost</i>

(¹) Hence O. *or* ; “or ever.

(²) For *már*, to which we have returned in *more* ; O. was *mo*

(³) Some of these are often formed in *-weard* ; as, *n rðe-weard*  
*northern, north-ward, úfe-weard (úp-weard) upper, up-ward.*

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
hindeme	hindere	hindemest
<i>hind</i>	<i>hinder</i>	<i>hindmost</i>
inneme (inn)	innere (innor)	innemest
<i>inner (in)</i>	<i>inner</i>	<i>inmost</i>
úteme (út)	útre (útor)	ýtemest
<i>outer (out)</i>	<i>outer, utter</i>	<i>outmost, utmost</i>
midd, midme		midmest
<i>mid</i>		<i>midmost</i>
niðeme(niðer)	niðre (niðror)	niðemest
<i>low (down)</i>	<i>nether</i>	<i>nethmost.</i>

## CHAPTER IV.

## I.—Pronouns—Personal.

THE personal Pronouns are *ic I*, *þú thou*, *hit, he*, *heó it, he, she*. The two first are the only A. S. words with a dual number.

## SINGULAR.

N.	ic <sup>(4)</sup>	þú <sup>(5)</sup>
A.	me	þe
A.&D.	me	þe
G.	mín	þín

	DUAL.	PLURAL.		DUAL.	PLURAL.
N.	wit <sup>(6)</sup>	we		git	ge
A.	unc	ús		inc	eów
A.&D.	unc	ús		inc	eów
G.	uncer	úre		incer	eówer

<sup>(4)</sup> Comp. *ἐγ-ω, με*, &c. L. *eg-o, me*; G. *ich, mir, wir*, (D. *wij*) *uns*, *unser*.

<sup>(5)</sup> Comp. (Dor.) *τῦ, τε*; L. *tu, te*; G. *du, dir, euch*, &c. D. *gij*, &c.

<sup>(6)</sup> Remark a peculiar construction with the dual:—*wit Scilling* *we two*, viz. *I and Scilling*; *healf þæs cinges, healf uncer Brentinges*, *half the king's, half mine and Brenting's*.

SINGULAR.		
Neut.	Masc.	Fem.
N. hit <sup>(1)</sup>	he	heó
A. hit	hine	hí
A. & D. him		hire
G. his		hire
PLURAL.		
N. & A. hí		
A. & D. him		
G. hira		

Meh, mec (L. mihi, G. mich) and þeh, pec (G. dich) sometimes occur for me and þe: likewise the poetical úsih, úsić, and eówih, eówic for ús and eów; and uncit and incit, for unc and inc.

There being, as in English, no reflective pronoun, the personals are used instead; as, ic me reste *I rest me* (*myself*); þa þeówas wyrmdon híg, *the servants were warming them* (*-selves*). Sylf *self, same*, declined as an adjective both definitely and indefinitely (I.), and agreeing with the pronoun or noun, gives a strong reflective sense; as, ic sylf or sylfa *I myself*; fram me sylfum *of myself*; þú sylf *thou thyself*; we sylfe *we ourselves*, &c.; seó sylfe tíð *the same time*.<sup>(2)</sup> Sometimes the pronoun stands in the dative before sylf; as, (ic) me sylf *I myself*; him-sylf *he himself*.<sup>(3)</sup>

(1) Comp. ó, ἡ, ὅν, οἱ, αἱ; L. id, is, ea, eum, ejus, ii; G. es, ihn, ihm, ihr; D. het, hij, &c.

(2) Comp. G. ich selber, wir selben, die selbe zeit, &c.

(3) Like F. *moi-même, lui-même*; hence seemingly *my-self, thy-self*, &c.: *self* is properly no more a noun than αὐτός, L. ipse, or F. *même*.

II.—*Possessives.*

The Possessive Pronouns are formed, as in German, from the genitives of the two first persons; as, *mín* (G. *mein*) *mine, my*; *þín* (G. *dein*) *thine, thy*; *uncer*, *úre* (G. *unser*) *our*; *incer*, *eówer* (G. *euer*) *your*: like other Pronouns in general, they are declined as indefinite adjectives I. Those in *-er* are usually contracted; as *uncer*, *eówres*, and the like. *U're* forms *úrum*, *úres*, &c; but remains unchanged in the whole feminine singular. The poetical *úser* (*usser*) for *úre* is thus declined:—

Neut.	Masc.	Fem.
	SINGULAR.	
N. <i>úser</i>	<i>úser</i>	<i>úser</i>
A. <i>úser</i>	<i>úserne</i>	<i>usse</i>
A. & D. <i>ussum</i>		<i>usse</i>
G. <i>usses</i>		<i>usse</i>
	PLURAL.	
	N. & A. <i>usse, úser</i>	
	A. & D. <i>ussum</i>	
	G. <i>ussa.</i>	

The genitive of the third person is used unchanged; *his, its, his, hire her, hira their*. To make these reflective, the genitive of *sylf* agreeing with the pronoun, or the indefinite adjective *ágen* *own*, agreeing with the noun, must be used; as, *þín sylfes bearn thine own son*; *tó his ágenre þearfe to his own need*. *Sín* occurs in poetry as a possessive of the third person; not however like G. *sein*, for L. *ejus*, but for L. *suus* only.

III.—*Demonstratives.*

The Demonstrative Pronouns are *þæt*, *se*, *seó* *that*, likewise the relative *which*, *who*, *that*, and the article *the*; <sup>(1)</sup> and *þis*, *þes*, *þeós* *this*.

	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.		Neut.	Masc.	Fem.
N.	þæt <sup>(2)</sup>	se	seó		þis <sup>(3)</sup>	þes	þeós
A.	þæt	þone	þá		þis	þisne	þás
	Abl. þý		þý			þise	þisse
	D. þám		þære			þisum	þisse
	G. þæs		þære			þises	þisse
	N. & A. þa					þás	
	A. & D. þám					þisum	
	G. þára					þissa	

*þæne*, *þám*, *þære*, *þára*, are sometimes used for *þone*, *þám*, *þære*, *þára*; likewise *þæs* for *þás*; the *s* in *þise*, &c. is often doubled; *þissere* and *þissera* occur also for *þisse* and *þissa*. The indeclinable *þe* is used for all cases of *þæt*, *se*, *seó*, as a relative; combined with it it forms *þæt-te* <sup>(4)</sup> *that which*, *se-þe* *he that*, *seó-þe* *she that*. *þæt*, *se*, *seó* is sometimes repeated in a sentence, standing first as a demonstrative, and next as a relative; but *þe* commonly stands as

(<sup>1</sup>) Comp. the threefold use of G. *das*, *der*, *die*.

(<sup>2</sup>) Comp. *το, ὁ, ἡ, τον, τα, τοι, ται*; G. *das*, *den*, *dem*, *der*, *des*, &c. D. *dat*, &c. From *seó* comes *she* (G. *sie*); from *þa* *they*, *þám* *them*, *þára* *their*.

(<sup>3</sup>) Comp. G. *dies*, &c.; *þás* and *þæs* have become *those* and *these*.

(<sup>4</sup>) *þætte* is also *that* (conjunction) G. *dass*.

relative in the second place; as, *þæt micle ge-teld þe Moises worhte, the great tent that Moses made.*

þe is sometimes used along with hit, &c. as a relative; as, *þe þurh hine through whom.*

Swá is sometimes used (like G. so) as an indeclinable relative.

Ylc *same*, follows the indefinite declension.

Swylc *such*, is often repeated, standing in the second place adverbially; as, *Ælc þing on-gitan swylc swylce hit is to understand each thing so as it is.*

#### IV.—Interrogatives.

The Interrogative Pronouns are *hwæt, hwá? what? who? hwylc? which? hwæðer whether? which?* The first has no plural, and is thus declined:

Neuter.	Masc. & Fem.
Nom. <i>hwæt</i>	<i>hwá</i>
Acc. <i>hwæt</i>	<i>hwone (hwæne)</i>
Abl. <i>hwý</i>	
Dat. <i>hwám (hwæm)</i>	
Gen. <i>hwæs</i> <sup>(5)</sup>	

It answers to L. *quis* not *qui*, and is never used as a relative: with a neuter adjective it governs the genitive; as, *hwæt yfeles? what evil?* it is also (like G. *et-was, was*) used not interrogatively, for *somewhat, a little*; as, *hwæt lytles some little.*

<sup>(5)</sup> From *hwám* and *hwæs*, are *whom* and *whose*.

## V.—Indefinites.

The Indefinite pronouns are swá-hwæt(-swá) *what-so-ever*, swá-hwá (-swá) *who-so-ever*, swá-hwylc (-swá) *which-so-ever*, æg-hwæt (ge-hwæt), æg-hwylc, &c. *whatsoever*, &c. which follow the declension of the chief word in the compound. Others are ælc, *each, every one*, eall *all*, ænig *any*, nænig *none whatever*, án-lipig (æn-lipig) *single, alone*, &c. Ge-noh *enough* is sometimes indeclinable. A'n *one, a*, and sum *some, a, a certain*, serve for the indefinite article, which is however often not expressed : sum placed after a genitive cardinal number implies one above it ; as, fíf-tyna sum *one of sixteen, one with fifteen others*. Manig (mænig) *many* sometimes has nom. and accus. plur. manega. Fela *much, many* is indeclinable : feáwa (feá) *few*, sometimes has abl. and dat. plur. feáwum, gen. feára ; both often govern a genitive plural ; as, mádma fela *many treasures* ; feá worda *few words*. Man (*man*) is used (like G. man, and F. on) (¹) indefinitely for *one, they* ; as, Me man sægde *they told me* (G. man sagte mir). From wiht (wuht) *creature, being*, (*wight, whit*) are formed á-wiht (á-wuht) contracted to áwht, áht *anything, ought* ; and nán-wiht (-wuht) náwh t, náht (²) *nothing, nought*. Other indefinite Pronouns are óðer (-or) *other, second* (L. alius, and alter for secundus), áwðer, áðer *one of two* (L. alter duorum), náwðer (náðor), *neither of two* (L. neuter), ægðer

(¹) Formerly *hom*, from L. homo.(²) Hence *not*, like G. nicht from ne-wicht.

*either, each of two.* O'd e r forms its oblique cases feim. sing. ó d r e ; it sometimes follows indefinite Decl. II.

# VI.—Comparative Table of Cardinal Numbers.

GREEK.	LATIN.	DUTCH.	A. S.	ENGLISH.	GERMAN.
έν	un-um	een	án	one	ein
δυο	duo	twée	twá	two	zwei
τρια	tria	drie	þreo	three	drei
κεττορε (³)	quatuor	vier	feower	four	vier
πεντε	quinque	vijf	fíf	five	fünf
έξ	sex	zes	six	six	sechs
έπτα	septem	zeven	seofon	seven	sieben
όκτω	octo	acht	eahta	eight	acht
έννεα	novem	negen	nigon	nine	neun
δεκα	decem	tien	tyn	ten	zehn

DUTCH.	A. S.	ENGLISH.	GERMAN.
elf	endlufon	eleven	eilf
twalf	twelf	twelve	zwölf
der-tien	þreo-ttyne	thir-teen	drei-zehn
veertien	feower-tyne	fourteen	vierzehn
vijftien	fíf-tyne	fifteen	funfzehn
zestien	six-tyne	sixteen	sechzehn
zeventien	seofon-tyne	seventeen	siebzehn
achtien	eahta-tyne	eighteen	achtzehn
negentien	nigon-tyne	nineteen	neunzehn
twin-tig	twen-tig	twen-ty	zwan-zig
dertig	þry-ttig	thirty	drei-ssig
veertig	feower-tig	forty	vierzig

(³) Æol. for τεσσαρα.

DUTCH.	A. S.	ENGLISH.	GERMAN.
vijftig	fif-tig	fifty	funfzig
zestig	six-tig	sixty	sechzig
zeventig	hund-seofon-tig	seventy	siebzig
tachtig <sup>(1)</sup>	hund-eahtatig	eighty	achtzig
negentig	hund-nigontig	ninety	neunzig
honderd	{ hund, hundred, } hund-teontig } hund-endlufontig 110 hund-twelftig 120	hundred	hundert
duizend	þúsend	thousand	tausend.

A'n, like all other pronouns, follows indef. Decl. I., sometimes making accus. masc. ænne; thus too nán *none*. Used definitely, áne, ána, áne, and standing after its noun, &c., it means *alone*. Twá <sup>(2)</sup> and þreo are thus declined:—

	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.
N. & A.	twá (tú)	twegen <sup>(3)</sup>	twá	þreo	þrý	þreo
	A. & D. twám (twæm)			þrym		
	G.	twegra (twega)		þreora.		

Bá, begen, bá *both*, follows twá; prefixed to twá it forms bá-twá (bú-tú) <sup>(4)</sup> which is indeclinable. The numbers feower to twelf inclusive, when used absolutely, have a nom. in -e, &c.; as, ealle seofone *all seven*; án of þám twelfum *one of the twelve*; án

(<sup>1</sup>) The t- is probably a remnant of the prefix h o n d- retained before the vowel.

(<sup>2</sup>) S. *twa*. G. *zwei*, *zwo*.

(<sup>3</sup>) *Twain*. G. *zween*.

(<sup>4</sup>) Hence *both*, G. *beide*; comp. Italian *ambe-due*.

þissa fífa *one of these five*. Those above eahta usually govern a genitive. Twentig and the others in -tig make abl. and dat. -tigum, gen. -tigra. Hund prefixed to the tens after sixtig (answering to -κοιτ-α, L. -gint-a) is sometimes dropt when hund *hundred* goes before; as, scipa án hund and eahtatig, *of ships one hundred and eighty*. Hund (*hundred*) follows II. 1; hundred and þúsend, III. 1.

Units are placed before tens, as, six and fíftig, *six and fifty*. In numbers above a hundred, the smaller stands last, and the noun is repeated; as, Hundteontig wintra and seofon and feowertig wintra, *a hundred winters and seven and forty winters*.<sup>(5)</sup>

Wintre affixed to numbers forms adjectives denoting age; as, fram twi-wintrum cilde, *from the child of two years*.

---

### VII.—Ordinal Numbers.

þæt forme, se forma, seó forme	<i>first</i>
þæt, se, seó óder	<i>second</i>
þæt þry-dde, se þry-dda, seó þry-dde <sup>(6)</sup>	<i>thir-d</i>
feor-þe, -þa, -þe	<i>four-th</i>
fíf-te, -ta, -te	<i>fifth</i>
six-te, — —	<i>sixth</i>
seof-þe, -þa, -þe	<i>seventh</i>
eahtoþe — —	<i>eighth</i>
nigoþe	<i>ninth</i>

<sup>(5)</sup> The northern nations reckoned time by winters.

<sup>(6)</sup> Comp. τρι-τος, L. ter-tius, G. dri-tte, vier-te, &c.

teóþe	<i>tenth</i>
endlyf-te	<i>eleventh</i>
twelfte	<i>twelfth</i>
þry-tteóðe	<i>thir-teenth</i>
feower-teóðe	<i>fourteenth</i>
fif-teóðe	<i>fifteenth</i>
six-teóðe	<i>sixteenth</i>
seofon-teóðe	<i>seventeenth</i>
eahta-teóðe	<i>eighteenth</i>
nigon-teóðe	<i>nineteenth</i>
twentig-oðe	<i>twenti-eth</i>
þryttigode	<i>thirtieth</i>
feowertigode	<i>fortieth</i>
fíftigode	<i>fiftieth</i>
sixtigode	<i>sixtieth</i>
hund-seofontigode	<i>seventieth</i>
hund-eahtatigode	<i>eightieth</i>
hund-nigontigode	<i>ninetieth</i>
hund-teontigode	<i>hundredth</i>
hund-endlufontigode	<i>110th</i>
hund-twelftigode	<i>120th</i>

Units combined with ordinal tens stand first when cardinals, last when ordinals; as, án and þryttigode *one and thirtieth*; þý twentigoðan dæge and þý feorðan dæge Septembris, *on the twenty and fourth day of September*.

Healf *half* placed after an ordinal number (like G. halb) reduces it by half; as, óðer-healf (lit. *second-half*) *one and a half*, (G. andert-halb); þridde-healf

(lit. *third-half*) *two and a half* (G. dritte-halb).<sup>(1)</sup> A'n, twá, þreo, form æn-e *once*, twi-wa (tu-wa) *twice*, þry-wa *thrice*; with the other cardinals, and all the ordinals, síð *a time* is used in the ablative for the same purpose; as, feower, fíf, &c. síðum or síðon *four, five, &c. times*; (þý) forman, óðre, þryddan, &c. síðe *the first, second, third, &c. time*.

## CHAPTER V.

### I.—Verbs. Conjugation.

THERE are two Orders of Verbs, as of Nouns; viz. the Simple and the Complex; <sup>(2)</sup> the former containing pure or open Verbs answering to the Greek in -αειν, -εειν, and -οειν, and to the Latin in -are, -ēre, and -ire; the latter impure or close Verbs, answering to the Greek regulars, and to the Latin in -ěre, &c.<sup>(3)</sup> The Simple Order forms its imperfect by adding -ode (-ede), -de, or -te to the root; the participle past by adding -od (-ed), -d, or -t: in the Complex the imperfect becomes monosyllabic and changes its vowel; the participle past ends in -en.<sup>(4)</sup> The former is divided into three Classes forming one Conjugation; the latter into two Conjugations of three Classes each.

<sup>(1)</sup> Comp. ἡμισυ-τριτος, L. sesqui-alter, -tertius.

<sup>(2)</sup> Simple Verbs are by Grimm termed Weak, Complex Strong.

<sup>(3)</sup> See Rask's Grammar, pp. 67—70.

<sup>(4)</sup> E. and G. verbs in general follow the A.S., though complex forms have in each not seldom become simple.

II.—*Comparative View of the Chief Tenses.*

## SIMPLE ORDER, OR CONJUGATION I.

Examples—*luf-ian to love*, G. *lieb-en*; *hýr-an to hear*, G. *hör-en*; *tell-an to tell, reckon*, G. *zähl-en*.

	Present.	Imperfect.	Part. past.
Class I.	ic luf-ige	— luf-ode	(ge-)luf-od
	<i>I love</i>	— lov-ed	lov-ed
	G. ich lieb-e	— lieb-te	ge-lieb-t
Class II.	hýr-e	hýr-de	(ge-)hýr-ed
	<i>hear</i>	hear-d	hear-d
	G. hör-e	hör-te	ge-hör t
Class III.	tell-e	teal-de	(ge-)teal-d
	<i>tell</i>	tol-d	tol-d
	G. zähl-e	zähl-te	ge-zähl-t.

## COMPLEX ORDER.—CONJUGATION II.

Examples—*brec-an to break*, G. *brech-en*; *heald-an to hold*, G. *halt-en*; *drag-an to draw, drag*, G. *trag-en*.

	Present.	Imperfect.	Part. past.
Class I.	brec-e	bræc	(ge-)broc-en
	<i>break</i>	brake	brok-en
	G. brech-e	brach	ge-broch-en
Class II.	heald-e	heóld	(ge-)heald-en
	<i>hold</i>	held	hold-en
	G. halt-e	hielt	ge-halt-en
Class III.	drag-e	dróh	(ge-)drag-en
	<i>draw</i>	drew	draw-n
	G. trag-e	trug	ge-trag-en.

CONJUGATION III.

Examples—bind-an *to bind*, G. bind-en; dríf-an *to drive*, G. treib-en; clúf-an *to cleave*, G. klieb-en.

	Present.	Imperfect.	Part. past.
Class I.	bind-e	band	(ge-)bund-en
	<i>bind</i>	<i>bound</i>	<i>bound-en</i>
	G. bind-e	band	ge-bund-en
Class II.	dríf-e	dráf	(ge-)drif-en
	<i>drive</i>	<i>drove</i>	<i>driv-en</i>
	G. treib-e	trieb	ge-trieb-en
Class III.	clúf-e	cleáf	(ge-)clof-en
	<i>cleave</i>	<i>clave</i>	<i>clov-en</i>
	G. klieb-e	klob	ge-klob-en.

III.—Simple Order, or Conjugation I.

CLASS I. CLASS II. CLASS III.

INDICATIVE MODE.

		Present.	
Sing.	ic luf-ige (¹)	hýr-e	tell-e
	pú luf-ast	hýr-st	tel-st
	he luf-ađ	hýr-đ	tel-đ
Plur. we, ge,	hí luf-iađ	hýr-ađ	tell-ađ
	luf-ige	hýr-e	tell-e
		Imperfect.	
Sing.	ic luf-ode	hýr-de	teal-de
	pú luf-odest	hýr-dest	teal-dest
	he luf-ode	hýr-de	teal-de
Pl. we, ge,	hí luf-odon	hýr-don	teal-don

(¹) Comp. *love*, *lov-est*, *lov-eth*; G. *lieb-e*, *lieb-est*, *lieb-et*, &c. L. *am-o*, *-as*, *-at*, &c.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

## Present.

Sing. luf-ige	hýr-e	tell-e
Plur. luf-ion	hýr-on	tell-on

## Imperfect.

Sing. luf-ode	hýr-de	teal-de
Plur. luf-odon	hýr-don	teal-don

## IMPERATIVE MODE.

Sing. luf-a	hýr	tel-e
Plur. { luf-iað	{ hýr-að	{ tell-að
{ luf-ige	{ hýr-e	{ tell-e

## INFINITIVE MODE.

Pres.	luf-ian	hýr-an	tell-an
Gerund.	tó luf-igenne	—hýr-enne	—tell-anne
Part. pres.	luf-igende	hýr-ende	tell-ende
P. past (ge-)	luf-od	(ge-) hýr-ed	(ge-) teal-d.

The first form of the present indicative, and of the imperative plural, is used when the pronoun comes first, or is left out; as, *we lufiað we love, hýrað hear*; the second when the pronoun follows close; as, *telle ge tell ye?* The subjunctive plural sometimes ends in *-an* or *-en*; as, *lufian, hýrden*, and the like. The gerund, which is always preceded by *tó*, and seems to be a kind of dative of the infinitive, answers to our infinitive present, active and passive, and to the Latin supines, infinitive future, active and passive, &c.; as, *Come þú ús tó for-spillanne? camest thou to destroy us? L. nos perditum. Hwæðder is éðre tó cweðanne? whether is easier to say? L. facilius dictu. Eart þú se-þe tó cumenne eart? art thou he that is (art) to come?*

L. qui venturus est. Heó býð tó lufigenne <sup>(1)</sup> *she is (must be, or ought) to be loved*, L. amanda est. The infinitive of the first Class is often formed in -igan, sometimes in -igean, for -ian, and g is put in or left out in some other forms with little or no change of pronunciation. The Gerund of the third Class sometimes makes -enne for -anne. Ge- may be prefixed to any part of verbs in general, but is oftenest used with the imperfect, and especially with the participle past, though not, as in German, to be considered the sign of the latter.<sup>(2)</sup>

#### IV.—Class I.

Like lufian are conjugated:

Present.	Imperfect.	Part. past.	
hatige	hatode	(ge-)hatod	<i>hate</i>
losige	losode	losod	<i>be lost</i>
clypige	clypode	clypod	<i>call, clepe</i>
fullige	fullode	fullod	<i>baptize</i>
fúlige	fúlode	fúlod	<i>rot</i>
cunnige	cunnode	cunnod	<i>try</i>
wacige <sup>(3)</sup>	wacode	wacod	<i>watch</i>
hangige <sup>(4)</sup>	hangode	hangod	<i>hang</i>
hýrige	hýrode	hýrod	<i>hire</i>
hergige	hergode	hergod	<i>harry</i>
macige	macode	macod	<i>make</i>
bletsige	bletsode	bletsod	<i>bless.</i>

(1) Hence the phrases "house to let," "he is to blame," &c.

(2) Ge- is seldom used before another prefix.

(3) Neut. L. vigilare; act. weccan.

(4) Neut. L. pendere; act. hangan, hón.

Some verbs of this Class, especially those having *e* for their vowel, form their imperfect and part. past in *-ede* and *ed*, as well as *-ode* and *od*; as, *herian to praise*, *seglian to sail*, *ge-fremian to profit*, which make *herede*, (*ge-*)*hered*, or *herode*, *herod*; *seglede*, and the like: *-ode* and *-od* are sometimes changed into *-ade* and *-ad*. *Swerian to swear*, borrows some tenses from a complex form, making imperf. *swerede* or *swóre* *swore*; imp. subj. *swóre*; imper. *swera* or *swere*; part. past (*ge-*)*sworen* *sworn*. *Folgian, fyligan, or fylian to follow*, has imperf. *folgoðe*, *fyligðe*, or *fylide*; imper. *folga* or *fylig*.

---

### V.—Class II.

The second Class forms its imperfect and participle past in *-de* and *-ed*, or in *-te* and *-t*, according to its characteristic letter; the hard consonants, viz. *t, p, c, x*, requiring *-te* and *-t*; the soft, viz. *d, ð, f, g, w, l, m, n, r, s*, taking *-de* and *-ed*; as,

Present.	Imperf.	Part. past.	
méte	métte	(ge-)mét	meet( <i>met</i> )
lette	lette	lett	let, hinder
dyppe	dyppe	dypt	dip( <i>-t</i> )
tæce	tæhte	tæht	teach( <i>taught</i> )
lixæ	lixte	lixt	gleam( <i>-ed</i> )
læde	lædde	læded	lead( <i>led</i> )
sende	sende	send	send
cýðe	cýðde	cýðed	make known
ge-lýfe	ge-lýfde	ge-lýfed	believe( <i>-d</i> )

Present.	Imperf.	Part. past.	
wrége	wrégde	wréged	<i>be-wray(-ed)</i>
be-læwe	be-læwde	be-læwed	<i>accuse(-d)</i>
fylle	fylde	fylled	<i>fill(-ed)</i>
týme	týmde	týmed	<i>teem(-ed)</i>
wéne	wénde	wéned	<i>ween(-ed)</i>
lære	lærde	læred	<i>teach</i>
ræse	ræsdde	ræsed	<i>rush(-ed).</i>

Some verbs in -gan are contracted; as, þreagan, þreán *to vex, reproach*, tveógan, tveón *to doubt*: pres. þreage or þreá, þreást, þreáð; pl. þreagað, þreáð, &c.; tveóge or tveó, tveóst, tveóð, &c.; imperf. þreáde, tveóde; part. past þreád, tveód.

The second and third persons singular sometimes make -est, -eð, especially when many consonants might otherwise meet; as, nemne (*I*) *name*, nemnest, nemneð; imperf. nemde: some have both forms; as, læde, lætst, læt, or lædest, lædeð; part. past læded or læd. Verbs with s, d, and t form the third person in -t; as, ræse, ræst; sende, sent; méte, mét: those with ð in ð, as cýðe, cýð; imperf. cýðde or cýdde; p. past cýðed or cýd. Verbs in this and the following classes with a double characteristic, drop one letter and take -e in the imperative; as, dyppe, dype, and the like. To this class belong several transitives, derived from intransitives of the Complex Order; as, bærnán *to burn* (act.), from byrnán *to burn* (neut.); drenčan (¹) *to drench*, from drinčan *to drink*; fyllan *to fell*, from

(¹) Comp. G. tránken, fállén, senken, setzen, from trínken, fállén, sínken, sítzen.

*feallan to fall*; *a-ræran to rear*, from *a-risan to arise*; *sencan to sink* (act.), from *sincan to sink* (neut.); *settan to set*, from *sittan to sit*; *ærnan to let run*, from *yrnan to run*. *Lybban to live*, and *hycgan to think*, borrow some forms from *leofian*, and *hogian*: they are thus conjugated:—

Indic. pres. 1. lybbe	Subj. pres. lybbe
2. leofast	plur. lybbon
3. leofað	Imperf. leofode
plur. { lybbað	plur. leofodon
lybbe	Imper. leofa
Imperf. leofode(-st)	plur. { lybbað
plur. leofodon	lybbe
Inf. pres. lybban	Part. pres. lybbende
Ger. lybbenne	P.past (ge-)leofod.

*Hæbban* or *habban*<sup>(1)</sup> *to have*, has some forms as if from *hafian*: it is thus conjugated:—

Ind. pres. 1. hæbbe (habbe)	Subj. pres. habbe (hæbbe)
2. hæfst (hafast)	plur. habbon
3. hæfd (hafað)	Imperf. hæfde
plur. { habbað (hafiað)	plur. hæfdon
hæbbe (habbe)	Imper. hafa
Imperf. hæfde(-st)	plur. { habbað
plur. hæfdon	habbe
Inf. pres. hæbban (habban)	Part. pres. hæbbende
Ger. habbenne	P.past (ge-)hæfed, hæfd.

The first person present is sometimes in poetry *hafu*

(<sup>1</sup>) Comp. throughout L. *hab-ere*, G. *hab-en*.

or hafo. Nabban (for nehabban) *to have not*, has an Indicative, Subjunctive, and Imperative, following habban.

### VI.—Class III.

The third Class changes *e* into *ea*, *é* into *ó*, &c. in the imperfect, forming it in *-de* or *-te*, and the part. past in *-d* or *-t* by the rules given above. The English synonyms commonly change the vowel in like manner, the German sometimes.

Pres.	Imperf.	Part. past.	
stelle	stealde	(ge-) steald	<i>leap</i>
recce	reahte <sup>(2)</sup>	reaht	<i>reck (raught)</i>
syлле	sealde	seald	<i>sell (sold)</i>
secge	{ sægde sæde	{ sægd sæd	} <i>say (said)</i>
lecge	lede	led	<i>lay (laid)</i>
bycge	bóhte	bóht	<i>buy (bought)</i>
séce	sóhte	sóht	<i>seek (sought)</i>
bringe <sup>(3)</sup>	bróhte	bróht	<i>bring (brought)</i>
wyrce	worhte	worht	<i>work (wrought)</i>

Secge makes 3 sing. pres. segð or sagað; imper. sege or saga. The impersonal þincan (G. dünken) *to seem*, must not be confounded with þencan (G. denken) *to think*. þincan makes 3 sing. pres. þincð (G. dünkt) (*me-*)*thinks*; plur. þincað; imperf. þúhte (G. dünkte) (*me-*)*thought*; part. past (ge-)þúht.

(<sup>2</sup>) Also rehte, &c.; réce, róhte is another form.

(<sup>3</sup>) Comp. G. bringe, brachte, ge-bracht.

þencan makes imperf. þóhte (G. dachte) *thought*; part. past (ge-)þóht (G. ge-dacht).

A few transitives also from complex intransitives belong to this class; as, a-cwellan *to kill* (*quell*), from a-cwelan *to perish* (*quail*); lecgan <sup>(1)</sup> *to lay*, from licgan *to lie*; weccan *to awaken*, from wacan *to wake*. Willan <sup>(2)</sup> *to will*, and nyllan <sup>(3)</sup> *to will not*, are thus conjugated:

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
Pres.	1. wille	Pres.	{ wille
	2. wilt		{ willon
	3. wile	Imperf.	{ wolde
pl.	{ willað		{ woldon
	{ wille		INFINITIVE.
Imperf.	wolde (-st)	Pres.	willan
pl.	woldon	P. pres.	willende
<hr/>			
Pres.	1. nelle	Pres.	nelle(nylle)
	2. nelt	pl.	nellon(nyllon)
	3. nele(nyle)	Imperf.	{ nolde
pl.	{ nellað(nyllað)		{ noldon
	{ nelle	Imper.	{ nelle
Imperf.	{ nolde(-st)		{ nellað, &c.
	{ noldon	Infin.	nyllan.

## VII.—Complex Order.

The Complex Order changes the vowel in the imperfect, as in English and German: the imperfect ends

(<sup>1</sup>) Comp. G. legen, wecken, from liegen, wachen.

(<sup>2</sup>) Βουλ-εσθαι, L. vell-e, vol-ui; G. woll-en, will, &c. woll-te.

(<sup>3</sup>) L. nolle, for ne velle.

with the characteristic, which however if *bb* becomes *f*; if *g, h*: in the second pers. sing. and in the plural *h* again becomes *g*.

The Second Conjugation changes certain vowels in the second and third persons sing. present as in German. The part. past sometimes changes its vowel, as in English and German.

Examples—*brecan to break, healdan to hold, dragan to draw, drag.*

CLASS I.		CLASS II.	CLASS III.
INDICATIVE MODE.			
Present.			
Sing. 1.	<i>brece</i> ( <sup>4</sup> )	<i>healde</i>	<i>drage</i>
	2. <i>bricst</i>	<i>hyltst</i>	<i>drægst</i>
	3. <i>bridð</i>	<i>hylt</i> ( <i>healt</i> )	<i>drægð</i>
Plur.	{ <i>brecað</i> <i>brece</i>	{ <i>healdað</i> <i>healde</i>	{ <i>dragað</i> <i>drage</i>
Imperfect.			
Sing. 1.	<i>bræc</i>	<i>heóld</i>	<i>dróh</i>
	2. <i>bræce</i>	<i>heólde</i>	<i>dróge</i>
	3. <i>bræc</i>	<i>heóld</i>	<i>dróh</i>
Plur.	<i>bræcon</i>	<i>heóldon</i>	<i>drógon</i>
SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.			
Present.			
Sing.	<i>brece</i>	<i>healde</i>	<i>drage</i>
Plur.	<i>brecon</i>	<i>healdon</i>	<i>dragon</i>
Imperfect.			
Sing.	<i>bræce</i>	<i>heólde</i>	<i>dróge</i>
Plur.	<i>bræcon</i>	<i>heóldon</i>	<i>drógon.</i>

(<sup>4</sup>) Comp. G. *breche, brichst, bricht*; *halte, hältst, hält*; plur. *brechen, halten, &c.*

CLASS I.		CLASS II.	CLASS III.
IMPERATIVE MODE.			
Sing.	brec	heald	drag
Plur.	{ brecað brece	{ healdað healde	{ dragað drage
INFINITIVE MODE.			
Pres.	brecan	healdan	dragan
Gen. tó	brecanne	—healdanne	—draganne
P.pres.	brecende	healdende	dragende
P.past.	(ge-)brocen	(ge-)healden	(ge-)dragen.

VIII.—*Class I.*

In the First Class *e* becomes in the second and third persons sing. present, *i* or *y*; *i* remains unchanged, as in German. The imperfect is formed in *æ*, which in the second pers. sing. and the whole plural becomes *æ*; or in *ea*: in the part. past *i* sometimes becomes *e*; *e*, *o*, &c.

First pers. pres.	Third pers.	Imperf.	P. past.
{ sprece <sup>(1)</sup>	spricð	spræc	(ge-)sprecen
{ spece	spicð	spæc	specen
<i>speak</i>		<i>spake</i>	<i>spoken</i>
trede .	trit	træd	treden
<i>tread</i>		<i>trod</i>	<i>trodden</i>
ete	yt	æt	eten
<i>eat</i>		<i>ate</i>	<i>eaten</i>
lese	list	læs	lesen
<i>lease, gather</i>			

(<sup>1</sup>) Comp. G. spreche, sprach; trete, trat, ge-treten, &c. ge-bäre, -bar, -boren; stehle, stahl, ge-stohlen, &c.

First pers. pres.	Third pers.	Imperf.	P. past.
bidde	bitt	bæd	beden
<i>bid</i>		<i>bade</i>	<i>bidden</i>
sitte	sitt	sæt	seten
<i>sit</i>		<i>sate</i>	<i>sitten</i>
licge	lið	læg	legen
<i>lie</i>		<i>lay</i>	<i>lien, lain</i>
swefe	swefð	swæf	swefen
<i>sleep</i>			
bere	byrð	bær	boren
<i>bear</i>		<i>bare</i>	<i>born</i>
stele	styld	stæl	stolen
<i>steal</i>		<i>stole</i>	<i>stolen</i>
for-gite	for-git	for-geat	for-giten
<i>forget</i>		<i>forgat</i>	<i>forgotten</i>
gife	gifð	geaf	gifen
<i>give</i>		<i>gave</i>	<i>given</i>

Niman *to take*, makes third pers. pres. nimð; imperf. nam, name, &c. p. past numen. Cuman (cwuman) *to come* makes third pers. cymð; imperf. com (cwom), come, &c. p. past cumen.

Wesan *to be* is thus conjugated:

## INDICATIVE.

Pres. 1. eom <sup>(2)</sup>	Imperf. 1. wæs
2. eart	2. wære
3. is (ys)	3. wæs
plur. synd (syndon)	plur. wæron

<sup>(2)</sup> Comp. εἰμ-ι, εἰσ-ι; L. sum, est, sum-us, sunt, sim, er-am, &c.; G. ist, sind, seyð, sey, war, wäre, ge-wesen.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres.	sý, (síg, seó)	Imperf.	wære
plur.	sýn	plur.	wæron
Imper.	wes	Inf. pres.	wesan
plur.	{ wesad wese	Ger.	tó wesanne
		Part. pres.	wesende
		Part. past	(ge-)wesen.

With some of these forms the negative *ne* is thus combined :

Pres. 1. (*ic*) *neom* (*I am not*). 3. *nis* (*nys*) ; imperf. *næs*, &c. ; subj. imperf. *nære*, &c.

*Cwæðan to say* is thus conjugated :

Indic. pres. *cwæde*, *cwyst*, *cwyrð* ; imperf. *cwæð*, *cwæde*, *cwæð* (*quoth*), pl. *cwædon* ; subj. pres. *cwæde*, imperf. *cwæde* ; part. past (ge-) *cweden* : it is otherwise regular.

## IX.—Class II.

In the Second Class *á* becomes *æ* ; *ea*, *y* ; *eá*, *ý* ; *ó*, *é*, in the second and third persons : the imperf. has *é*, or *eó* (*e* or *eo*).

First pers. pres.	Third person.	Imperf.	Part. past.
<i>læte</i> ( <sup>1</sup> )	<i>læt</i>	<i>let</i>	(ge-) <i>læten</i>
<i>let</i>			
<i>slæpe</i>	<i>slæpð</i>	<i>slép</i>	<i>slæpen</i>
<i>sleep</i>		<i>slep-t</i> ( <sup>2</sup> )	

(<sup>1</sup>) Comp. G. *lasse*, *lässt*, *liess*, *ge-lassen* ; *heisse*, *hiess* ; *wachse*, *wuchs* ; *laufe*, *läuft*, *lief*, &c.

(<sup>2</sup>) *Slept*, *lept*, *swept*, *wept*, are complex forms become simple : *slep*, *lep*, &c., as also *bet*, are still in P. use.

First pers. pres.	Third person.	Imperf.	Part. past.
háte <i>command</i>	hæt	{ héht <sup>(3)</sup> hét }	hátén
hó <i>hang</i>	héhđ	heng <i>hung</i>	hangen
wealde <i>govern, wield</i>	wylt	weóld	wealden
fealle <i>fall</i>	fylđ (fealđ)	feoll <i>fell</i>	feallen <i>fallen</i>
weaxe <i>wax, grow</i>	wyxd	weox	weaxen <i>waxen</i>
beáte <i>beat</i>	beáted	beót (bet)	beáten <i>beaten</i>
blóte <i>sacrifice</i>	blét	bleót	blóten
hleápe <i>leap</i>	hlýpđ	hleóp <i>lep-t</i>	hleápen
swápe <i>sweep</i>	swápđ (swápeđ)	sweóp <i>swep-t</i>	swápen
wépe <i>weep</i>	wépđ	weóp <i>wep-t</i>	wépen
cnáwe <i>know</i>	cnæwđ	cneów <i>knew</i>	cnáwen <i>known</i>
heáwe <i>hew</i>	heáweđ	heów	heówen <i>hewn</i>
grówe <i>grow</i>	gréwđ	greów <i>grew</i>	grówen <i>grown</i>

(<sup>3</sup>) HÉHT is a relic of the reduplication in use in Gothic as in Greek, and of which Latin retains several instances; leólc from lácan to play (O. lake), is of like nature.

The imperfects without an accent are of doubtful quantity.

Hátan when meaning *to be called*, has the simple imperfect hátte, but part. past (ge-)háten.

Hó makes pres. plur. hóđ, hó; imper. hoh; infin. hangan or hón, and is followed by fangan, fón *to take*.

Cneów and the like often become cnéw &c.

Gangan, gán<sup>(1)</sup> *to go*, dón *to do*, and búan *to inhabit, cultivate* (G. bauen, L. colere) are thus conjugated:

INDICATIVE.		
Pres. 1. gange, gá <sup>(2)</sup>	dó	búe
2. gæst	dést	býst
3. gæđ	déđ	býđ
pl. { gáđ	{ dóđ	
{ gá	{ dó	
Imperf. geong, eóde	dyde	búde
SUBJUNCTIVE.		
Sing. gá	dó	bú
Pl. gán	dón	bún
IMPERATIVE.		
Sing. gang, gá	dó	
Pl. { gáđ	{ dóđ	
{ gá	{ dó	

(<sup>1</sup>) S. and P. gang, gae. The contracted forms are most used; eóde is the common imperfect, geong the poetical.

(<sup>2</sup>) Comp. G. gehe, gieng, ge-gangen; thue, that, ge-than.

## INFINITIVE.

Pres.	gangan, gán	dón	búan
Ger.		tó dónne	
P. pres.	gangende	dónde	búende
P. past	gangen, gán	(ge-)dón	(ge-)bún.

## X.—Class III.

In the Third Class, a becomes æ; eá, ý, &c. in the second and third persons: the imperfect has ó.

First pers. pres.	Third person.	Imperf.	Part. past.
scace	scæcđ	scóc (sceóc)	(ge-)scacen
<i>shake</i>		<i>shook</i>	<i>shaken</i>
fare <sup>(3)</sup>	færđ	fór	faren
<i>fare, go</i>			
hlihhe	hlihđ	hlóh	hlogen
<i>laugh</i>			
sleá	slýhđ	slóh	slegen
<i>slay</i>		<i>slew</i>	<i>slain</i>
hlade	hlæt	hlód	hladen
<i>lade</i>			<i>laden</i>
grafe	græfđ	gróf	grafen
<i>grave, dig</i>			<i>graven</i>
hebbe	hefđ	hóf	hafen
<i>heave</i>		<i>hove</i>	
scyppe	scypđ	scóp (sceóp)	sceapen
<i>shape, create</i>			<i>shapen</i>
wacse	wæxđ	wócs	wæscen
<i>wash</i>			<i>washen</i>

(<sup>3</sup>) G. fahre, fährt, fuhr, ge-fahren; schlage, schlug; hebe, hob, gehoben; scheide, schied, ge-schieden, &c.

First pers. pres.	Third pers.	Imperf.	Part. past.
stande	stent	stód	standen
<i>stand</i>		<i>stood</i>	
gale	gæld	gól	galen
<i>enchant</i>			
spane	spænd	spón	spanen
<i>allure</i>			
sceade	scyt	sceód(')	sceaden
<i>part, shed</i>			

Sleá makes imper. slýh or sléh; infin. sleán: thus also leán *to blame*, and þweán *to wash*; p. past þwegen, þwogen. Stande sometimes has standest, standeð.

### XI.—Conjugation III.

In the Third Conjugation the vowel remains the same in the present; but that of the imperfect is changed in the second person singular, and in the whole plural: the part. past has either the same vowel as these persons, or one near akin.

Examples:—bindan *to bind*, drífan *to drive*, clúfan *to cleave*.

CLASS I.	CLASS II.	CLASS III.
	INDICATIVE MODE.	
	Present.	
Sing. 1. binde	drífe	clúfe
2. bintst	drífst	clúfst
3. bint	drífd	clúfd

(') P. *shod*.

Plur.	{ bindað binde	{ drífað drífe	{ clúfað clúfe
-------	-------------------	-------------------	-------------------

Imperfect.

Sing. 1.	band	dráf	cleáf
2.	bunde	drife	clufe
3.	band	dráf	cleáf
Plur.	bundon	drifon	clufon

SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

Present.

Sing.	binde	drífe	clúfe
Plur.	bindon	drífon	clúfon

Imperfect.

Sing.	bunde	drife	clufe
Plur.	bundon	drifon	clufon

IMPERATIVE MODE.

Sing.	bind	dríf	clúf
Plur.	{ bindað binde	{ drífað drífe	{ clúfað clúfe

INFINITIVE MODE.

Pres.	bindan	drífan	clúfan
Ger.	bindanne	drífanne	clúfanne
P. pres.	bindende	drífende	clúfende
P. past	(ge-)bunden	(ge-)drifen	(ge-)clofen.

## XII.—Class I.

In the First Class, i (y), e, eo, become a (o), ea, æ, in the imperfect, and these in the second person and plural are again changed to u: the part. past has u or o.

First pers. pres.	Third pers.	Imperf.	Part. past.
yrne <sup>(1)</sup>	yrnd̃	arn	(ge-)urnen
<i>run</i>		<i>ran</i>	<i>run</i>
{ frine	frind̃	fran	frunen
{ frigne		frægn	frugnen
<i>enquire</i>			
singe	singd̃	sang	sungen
<i>sing</i>		<i>sang</i>	<i>sung</i>
drince	drined̃	dranc	druncen
<i>drink</i>		<i>drank</i>	<i>drunken</i>
swimme	swimd̃	swamm	swommen
<i>swim</i>		<i>swam</i>	<i>swum</i>
climbe	climb̃d̃	clomm	clumben
<i>climb</i>		<i>clomb</i>	
swelle	swyld̃	sweoll	swollen
<i>swell</i>			<i>swollen</i>
swelge	swylgd̃	swealh	swolgen
<i>swallow</i>			
melte	mylt	mealt	molten
<i>melt</i>			<i>molten</i>
gelde	gylt	geald	golden
<i>pay</i>			
helpe	hyld̃	healp	holpen
<i>help</i>			<i>holpen</i>
delfe	dylfd̃	dealf	dolfen
<i>delve</i>			
murne	myrnd̃	mearn	mornen
<i>mourn</i>			

(1) G. rinne, rann, ge-ronnen; singe, sang, ge-sungen; trinke, trank; schwelle, schwillt, schwoll, ge-schwollen, &c.

First pers. pres.	Third pers.	Imperf.	P. past.
beorge <i>save, defend</i>	byrgð	bearh	borgen
weorpe <i>throw</i>	wyrpð	wearp	worpen
steorfe <i>die, starve</i>	styrfd	stærf	storfen
berste <i>burst</i>	byrst	bærst	borsten <i>borsten</i>
persce <i>thresh</i>	þyrscð	þærsc	þorscen
feohte <i>fight</i>	fyht	feaht <i>fought</i>	fohten <i>foughten</i>
{ bregde		brægd	brogden }
{ brede <i>braid, draw</i>	brit	bræd	broden }

Weorðan<sup>(2)</sup> *to be, to become*, is thus conjugated :

Indic. pres. sing. 1. weorðe	Subj. pres. weorðe, &c.
2. wyrst	Imperf. wurde, &c.
3. wyrd	Imperf. weorð
plur. { weorðað weorðe	plur. { weorðað weorðe
Imperf. sing. 1. weard	Inf. pres. weorðan
2. wurde	Ger. weorðanne
3. weard	Part. pres. weorðende
plur. wurden	P. past (ge-)worden

(<sup>2</sup>) Comp. throughout G. werden.

XIII.—*Class II.*

In the Second Class, *í* becomes in the imperfect *á*, and this in the second person, &c. *i*: the part. past has likewise *i*.

First pers. pres.	Third pers.	Imperf.	Part. past.
scíne <sup>(1)</sup> <i>shine</i>	scínd	scán <i>shone</i>	(ge-)scinen
wríte <i>write</i>	wrít	wrát <i>wrote</i>	writen <i>written</i>
a-ríse <i>arise</i>	a-ríst	a-rás <i>arose</i>	a-risen <i>arisen</i>
be-swíce <i>deceive</i>	be-swícd	be-swác	be-swicen
stíge <i>ascend</i>	stíhd	stáh	stigen
a-bíde <i>abide</i>	a-bíded	a-bád <i>abode</i>	a-biden <i>abiden</i>
grípe <i>gripe</i>	grípd	gráp	gripen
ríde <i>ride</i>	rít	rád <i>rode</i>	riden <i>ridden</i>
spíwe <i>spew</i>	spíwd	spáw	spiwen <i>spewn</i>
wríde <i>writhe, wreathe</i>	wríd	wráđ	wriden

(<sup>1</sup>) G. *scheine*, *schien*, *ge-schienen*; *steige*, *stieg*; *greife*, *griff*, *ge-griffen*, &c.

XIV.—*Class III.*

In the Third Class, *eó* or *ú* becomes *eá* in the imperfect; in the second person &c. *u*: the part. past has *o*.

First pers. pres.	Third pers.	Imperf.	Part. past.
<i>reóce</i> ( <sup>2</sup> ) <i>reek</i>	<i>rýcđ</i>	<i>reác</i>	(ge-)rocen
<i>sceóte</i> <i>shoot</i>	<i>scýt</i>	<i>sceát</i> <i>shot</i>	<i>scoten</i> <i>shotten</i>
<i>creópe</i> <i>creep</i>	<i>crýpđ</i>	<i>creáp</i>	<i>cropen</i>
<i>ceówe</i> <i>chew</i>	<i>cýwđ</i>	<i>ceáw</i>	<i>cowen</i>
<i>leóge</i> <i>lye</i>	<i>lýhđ</i>	<i>leáh</i>	<i>logen</i>
<i>fleóge</i> <i>fly, flee</i>	<i>flýhđ</i>	<i>fleáh</i> <i>flew</i>	<i>flogen</i> <i>flown</i>
<i>beóde</i> <i>bid</i>		<i>beád</i> <i>bade</i>	<i>boden</i> <i>bidden</i>
<i>súce</i> <i>suck</i>	<i>sýcđ</i>	<i>seác</i>	<i>socen</i>
<i>búge</i> <i>bow, bend</i>	<i>býhđ</i>	<i>beáh</i>	<i>bogen</i> <i>bown</i>
<i>lúte</i> <i>lout, bow</i>	<i>lýt</i>	<i>leát</i>	<i>loten</i>

(<sup>2</sup>) *G. rieche, roch, ge-rochen ; schiesse, schoss, &c.*

Ceósan *to choose*, makes third pers. pres. cýst; imperf. ceás *chose*, second pers. cure, plur. curon; p. past coren<sup>(1)</sup>.

Seóðan *to seethe*, has third pers. sýð; imperf. seáð, sode, &c.; p. past soden *sodden*.<sup>(2)</sup> Thus also others in -san and -ðan.

Fleóge is contracted to fleó, plur. fleóð, fleó; infin. fleógan, fleón; thus likewise teógan, teón *to draw, tug*: wreón *to cover*, and þeón *to thrive*, have only the contracted forms.

Seón *to see*, makes imperf. seáh or séh, sáwe or sége, &c. imper. seóh or sýh; part. present seónde; part. past (ge-)sewen, or segen.

Ge-feón (-feán) *to rejoice*, has imperf. ge-feáh or -féh, ge-fage or -fege; part. past ge-fagen, -fægen. Beón *to be*, is defective :

Indic. pres. 1. beó <sup>(3)</sup>	Subj. pres. beó
2. býst	plur. beón
3. býð	Imper. beó
plur. { beóð	plur. { beóð
{ beó	{ beó.
Infin. beón. Ger. tó beónne. Part. pres. beónde.	

---

### XV.—*Anomalous Verbs.*

The following verbs are Anomalous, having for their present an old imperfect of the Complex Order, and for their imperfect one formed since after the Simple Order.

(<sup>1</sup>) G. kiese, kor, ge-koren.

(<sup>2</sup>) G. siede, sott, ge-sotten.

(<sup>3</sup>) G. bin, bist.

Pres. 1. 3. A'h, 2. áge, pl. ágon (*owe*); imperf. áhte (*ought*); infin. ágan; p. past. ágen: *own, possess*. Likewise combined with ne; náh, náhte, &c.

An, 2. unne, pl. unnon; imperf. úðe; inf. unnan; p. past (ge-)unnen: *grant*.

Can<sup>(2)</sup> (*can*); 2. cunne or canst, pl. cunnon; imp. cúðe (*could*); inf. cunnan; p. past (ge-)cúð: *know, ken, be able*.

Deáh, duge, dugon; imp. dóhte; inf. dúgan: *be good, brave, worth*.

Dear, dearst, durren; subj. durre: imp. dorste (*durst*); inf. dearan: *dare*.

Ge-man<sup>(3)</sup>, ge-manst, ge-munon: imp. ge-munde; inf. ge-munan: *remember*.

Mæg<sup>(4)</sup>, miht, magon (*may*); subj. mæge (*mage*); imp. mihte (*meahte*) (*might*); inf. magan: *be able*.

Mót<sup>(5)</sup>, móst, móton; subj. móte; imp. móste: *may, might, must*.

Sceal<sup>(6)</sup> (*shall*), scealt (*shalt*), sceolon (*sculon*); subj. scyle; imp. sceolde (*should*); inf. sculan: *owe*.

Wát<sup>(7)</sup> (*wot*), wást, witon; imp. wiste (*wisse*) (*wist*); subj. wíte; imper. wíte, wítað; inf. wítan; ger. tó wítanne (*to wit*); p. pres. wítende; p. past witen: *know*. Thus also nýtan *to know not*.

(<sup>2</sup>) Comp. L. novi *I know*; G. kenne, kann, kannte, konnte, &c.

(<sup>3</sup>) Comp. L. defective me-min-i *I remember*.

(<sup>4</sup>) G. mag, möge, mögte, &c.

(<sup>5</sup>) G. muss, musste, &c.

(<sup>6</sup>) G. soll, sollte, &c.

(<sup>7</sup>) Comp. oíða *I know*; G. weiss, wusste, wissen; L. scio; as distinguished from can (cn áwe) γινωσκω, L. novi.

þearf<sup>(1)</sup>, þearft or þurfe, þurfon; subj. þurfe; imp. þorfte; inf. þearfan: *need*.

---

## XVI.—Auxiliaries, &c.

The A. S. has no future tense, the present serving for both: *wille* and *sceal*, like G. *will* and *soll*, imply will, duty, and the like, and are not used like *will* and *shall*, to form a simple future; the present of *beón* has commonly a future power. The perfect and pluperfect are formed as in English, German, &c. by means of the verb *to have*; as, *ic hæbbe (ge-)lufod I have loved.*<sup>(2)</sup> The participle past being as in the above-named tongues the only true passive form, the passive tenses are formed throughout by the help of the auxiliaries *wesan*, *weorðan*, and *beón to be*; as, present *ic eom*, or *weorðe lufod*<sup>(3)</sup> *I am loved*; imperf. *ic wæs*, or *weard lufod*; perf. *ic eom lufod worden I have been loved*; pluperf. *ic wæs lufod worden I had been loved*; future, *ic beó lufod I shall be loved*.

Impersonal verbs are like those of other languages; as, *hit rind it rains*; *hit ge limpð it happens*. Some have a passive sense; as, *a-lýfd it is allowed, lawful* (L. *licet*); *ge-wyrð it is agreed, seems good* (L. *convenit*).

(<sup>1</sup>) G. *darf*, *durfte*.

(<sup>2</sup>) The imperfect is often used for the pluperfect.

(<sup>3</sup>) Comp. G. *ich habe, hatte, werde, wurde, ge-liebt*; *ich bin, war, geliebt worden*.

## CHAPTER VI.

I.—*Formation of Words. Prefixes.*

As in Greek, Latin, German, &c. this branch of the language must be strictly attended to, if we would learn the origin, gender, and inflection of words: it consists of Derivation, and Composition, in both which the A. S. closely resembles the German. Derivation either modifies the meaning of a word by putting before it a prefix, or changes its part of speech, and inflection, by adding a termination. Composition forms new words by joining one or more together.

The following are the chief prefixes:

un- (on-) (L. *in-*; E. and G. *un-*): un-scyldig (G. un-schuldig) *in-nocent*; un-tigian *to un-tie*.

n- (ne *not*; L. *ne*): n-yllan (for newillan; L. n-olle for ne velle) *to will not, nill*; n-án *none*.

mis- (E. *mis-*; G. *miss-, misse-*): mis-truwian (G. mis-trauen) *to mis-trust*; mis-dæd (G. misse-that) *mis-deed*.

wan-<sup>(4)</sup> (wana *wanting*): wan-hál *unhealthy*.

to-<sup>(5)</sup> (L. *dis-*; G. *zer-*): to-breca (L. dis-rumpere, G. zer-brechen) *to break in pieces*; to-drífan (L. dispellere, G. zer-treiben) *to scatter, drive away*.

<sup>(4)</sup> Hence O. *wan-hope* (D. wan-hoop) *despair*; wan-trust (D. wan-trouw) *mis-trust*.

<sup>(5)</sup> Hence O. *to-broken, to-torn* &c. The prefix to- must be carefully distinguished from the preposition tó.

for-(') (L. *per-* ; F. *for-* ; G. *ver-*): for-beóðan (G. *ver-bieten*) *to for-bid* ; for-swerian (L. *per-jurare*) *to for-swear* ; for-gán *to for-go* ; for-bærnan (G. *ver-brennen*) *to burn up, consume* ; for-gifan (G. *ver-geben*) *to give away, for-give*.

wider- (wið *against* ; G. *wider-*): wiðer-saca (G. *wider-sacher*) *adversary*.

and- (ǽnri; G. *ant-*): and-wlíta (G. *ant litz*) *coun-tenance*.

ge- (G. *ge-* ; L. *com-, con-, co-*): has in general a collective sense ; as, ge-bróðra (G. *ge-brüder*) *brethren* ; ge-scý (G. *ge-schuhe*, F. *chaussure*) *shoes* ; ge-mæne (G. *ge-mein*, L. *com-mune*) *common* ; ge-fera (G. *ge-fährte*, L. *com-es*) *companion* ; it forms active verbs from neuters, nouns, &c. as, ge-standan *to urge* ; ge-þencan (G. *ge-denken*) *to think of, remember* ; ge-strangian *to strengthen* ; ge-leánian *to reward* ; ge-niderian *to de-grade, condemn* ; from standan, þencan, strang, leán (*reward*), niðer ; or gives a figurative sense ; as, biddan *to ask, beg*, ge-biddan *to pray*. Many words, however, take ge- without any change of meaning ; as, seón, ge-seón *to see* ; hýran, ge-hýran *to hear, obey* ; mearc, ge-mearc *mark, limit* ; rúm, ge-rúm *wide, roomy*.

be- (E. and G. *be-*) makes neuter verbs active ; as, gán *to go*, be-gán *to commit, &c.* (G. *gehen, be-gehen*) ; feran *to go*, be-feran *to travel over* (G. *fahren, be-fahren*). It is sometimes privative ; as, bycgan *to buy*, be-bycgan *to sell* ; be-heáfdian *to be-head*: often in-

(') Hence O. *for-done, for-spent, &c.* The prefix *for-* must not be confounded with the preposition *for*, which seems not to occur in composition.

tensive; as, reáfian *to rob*, be-reáfian *to be-reave* (G. rauben, be-rauben); be-gyrdan (G. be-gürten) *to begird*; or otherwise modifies the sense; as, be-healdan *to be-hold*, be-sprecan (G. be-sprechen) *to be-speak*.

ed- (*again, re-*): ed-niwian *to re-new*.

sin- (*simle always*, L. semper): sin-grén *ever-green*.

sam- (L. semi-): sam-cuce<sup>(2)</sup> *half-quick, half-dead*.

æg- or ge- gives pronouns and adverbs an indeterminate sense; as, æg-hwylc (ge-hwylc) *each, every*, æg-hwider *whithersoever*.

## II.—Nominal Terminations.

The following are the chief Nominal Terminations, denoting for the most part persons:

-a<sup>(3)</sup>: cemp-a *warrior, champion*; hunt-a *hunter*; bog-a *bow*.

-ere: (E. and G. -er; L. -or): reáf-ere (G. räub-er) *robb-er*; sæd-ere (L. sat-or) *sow-er*.

-end (from the part. pres.): Hæl-end (G. Heil-and) *Saviour, healer*; weald-end *ruler*.

-e: hyrd-e *herd, keeper*; sig-e *victory*; riht-wís-e *righteousness*.

-el, -ol, -l (E. -le; G. -el): byd-el (G. bed-el) *herald, bead-le*; gaf-ol *tribute, gav-el*; set-l (G. sess-el) *seat, sett-le*.

-ing: æðel-ing *prince, young noble*; Wóden-ing *son of Woden*; earm-ing *poor wretch*.

<sup>(2)</sup> Cuc, cucu, cucen, cwic (-e) are also found.

<sup>(3)</sup> Answering sometimes to L. -o; as, gum-a, L. hom-o *man, groom*; hence brýd-guma G. bräuti-gam, *bride-groom*.

-ling (E. *-ling*; G. *-lein, -ling*): cnæp-ling (G. knäb-lein) *little boy*; deór-ling (G. theuer-ling) *darling*.

-incle (L. *-uncul-us, -a*): ráp-incle *little rope*.

-en (E. *-en*; G. *-chen*): mægð-en *maid-en*, from mægð *maid* (G. magd, mäd-chen); cyc-en *chick-en*, from cocc *cock*.

-en (E. *-en*): þeód-en *sovereign*; byrð-en *burth-en*.

-en (E. *-en*; G. *-in*). Feminines from masculines sometimes change the vowel; as, þen, þin-en *slave, female slave*; fox, fyx-en (G. fuchs, fuchs-in) *fox, vix-en*; sometimes not; as, þeow, þeow-en *slave*. Some change the vowel, and take *-e*; others change the vowel only; as, mearh, myr-e *horse, mare*; wulf, wylf (G. wolf, wölf-in) *wolf, she-wolf*.

-estre (E. and D. *-ster*): sang-estre (D. zang-ster) *song-ster*, from sangere *singer*; sæm-estre *seam-ster*, from sæm-ere *seamer, tailor*.<sup>(1)</sup>

The following denote a state, action, or the like:

-dóm (E. *-dom*; G. *-thum*): wís-dóm *wis-dom*; cyne-dóm<sup>(2)</sup> (G. könig-thum) *king-ship*.

-hád (E. *-head, -hood*; G. *-heit*): mæden-hád *maid-en-head*; cild-hád (G. kind-heit) *child-hood*.

<sup>(1)</sup> In *songstr-ess, seamstr-ess*, a Latin-French termination has been super-added. *Huck-ster, malt-ster, tap-ster*, and the like, are the true feminines of *hawk-er, malt-er, tapp-er*, &c. *Spin-ster* is yet rightly used.

<sup>(2)</sup> We have confounded *-dom* and *-ric*, but *-dóm* was properly the *office, rank, -rice the territory*: thus, cyne-dóm, cyne-ríce (G. könig-reich); bisceop-dóm, bisceop-ríce, and the like.

-scipe (E. *-ship* ; G. *-schaft*) : hláford-scipe *lordship* ; freónd-scipe (G. *freund-schaft*) *friend-ship*.

-lác (E. *-lock*) : wíf-lác, *wed-lock*.

-að, -oð : hunt-að *hunting* ; war-oð *sea-shore*.

-uð, -ð (E. *-th* ; G. *-end*) : geóg-uð (G. *jug-end*) *youth* ; treów-ð *troth, truth*.

-leást (-lýst ; from adj. in -leás) : gýme-leást *heedlessness*.

-ung, -ing (E. *-ing* ; G. *-ung*) : hál-g-ung (G. *heiligung*) *hallow-ing* ; leorn-ing *learn-ing*.

-nes (-nys, -nis ; E. *-ness* ; G. *-niss*) : car-leás-nes *careless-ness* ; ge-líc-nes (G. *gleich-niss*) *like-ness*.

-u, -eo, -o (G. *-e*) : hæ-t-u (G. *hitz-e*) *heat* ; mænig-eo (G. *meng-e*) *many, multitude* ; bræd-o (G. *breit-e*) *breadth*.

-els (E. *-le* ; G. *-el*) : ræd-els (G. *räths-el*) *ridd-le* ; sticc-els (G. *stach-el*) *stick-le, sting*.

-ed : rec-ed *mansion* ; eow-ed *flock*.

-m (E. *-om* ; G. *-en*) : bot-m (G. *bod-en*) *bott-om*.

-ot, -et, -t : þeow-ot, þeow-t *slavery* ; bærn-et *burning*.

-d, -t (E. *-th, -d, -t* ; G. *-t*) : ge-byr-d (G. *ge-bur-t*) *bir-th* ; ge-cyn-d *kin-d, nature* ; mih-t (G. *mach-t*) *migh-t*.

-ræden (ræd *counsel*) : hiw-ræden *house-hold* ; mæg-ræden *relationship*.

### III.—Adjectival Terminations.

-e : ædel-e *noble* ; fæg-e *fated, fey*.

-ig (E. *-y*, G. *-ig*) : dreór-ig (G. *traur-ig*) *drear-y* ; bys-ig *bus-y*.

-líc (E. *-like*, *-ly*, G. *-lich*): leóf-líc (G. *lieb-lich*) *love-ly*; wíf-líc (G. *weib-lich*) *woman-like*, *woman-ly*.

-isc (E. *-ish*, G. *isch*): cild-isc (G. *kind-isch*) *child-ish*; Engl-isc (G. *engl-isch*) *Engl-ish*, *Anglo-Saxon*.

-sum (E. *-some*, G. *-sam*): lang-sum (G. *lang-sam*) *tedious*, *long-some*; wyn-sum (G. *wonne-sam*) *amiable*, *win-some*.

-ol (-ul) (L. *-ul-us*): sprec-ol *talkative*.

-en (E. and G. *en*): fleax-en (G. *flachs-en*) *flax-en*; hæð-en *heath-en*.

-bære (beran *to bear*: G. *-bar*): lust-bære (G. *lust-bar*) *pleasant*; wæstm-bære *fruitful*.

-cund (cynn *kind*, *race*): woruld-cund *worldly*.

-iht (G. *-icht*): þorn-iht (G. *dorn-icht*) *thorny*.

-weard (adj. and adv.; E. *-ward*): tó-weard *to-ward*, *to come*; hám-weard *home-ward*.

-feald (E. *-fold*): án-feald *single*, *one-fold*; twi-feald, *two-fold*; manig-feald *mani-fold*.

-leás (E. *-less*, G. *-los*): syn-leás (G. *sünde-los*) *sin-less*; ár-leás (G. *ehr-los*) *void of honour*, *impious*.

-wís (*wise*): ge-wís (G. *ge-wiss*) *certain*; riht-wís *righteous*.

-ern (E. *-ern*): súð-ern *south-ern*.

-tyme: hefig-tyme *troublesome*.

#### IV.—Verbal Terminations.

-ian (-igan, -igean) forms verbs (I. 1.) from nouns, adjectives, and particles; as, cear-ian *to care*, ge-hýrsumian *to obey*, wiðer-ian *to oppose*; from cearu *care*, ge-hýrsum *obedient*, wiðer *against*.

C, g, n, or s, sometimes stands before -ian; as, gear-c-ian *to prepare*, syn-g-ian *to sin*, wít-n-ian *to punish*, mæ-r-s-ian *to magnify*; from gearu *ready*, yare, syn sin, wíte *punishment*, mære *great, famous*.

-án is contracted from -angan, -ágan, or -agan, and -ahan; as, gangan, gán *to go*; smeágan, smeán *to consider, enquire*; preagan, preán *to vex*; sleahan, sleán (G. schlagen) *to strike, slay*.

-ón is contracted from -angan, or -ógan; as, fangan, fón *to take*; teógan, teón *to draw, tug*.

-ettan: hál-ettan *to hail, greet*, from hál *whole, hale*.

After c and g, e is not seldom inserted; as, ráec-ean, picg-ean, for ráec-an *to reach*, picg-an *to touch, taste, &c.*

Other verbs in general form the infinitive in -an.

### V.—Particles.

Adverbs, prepositions, and conjunctions, are either primitive words, that is, not to be further resolved in the language treated of, or are formed from nouns (often obsolete), adjectives, &c. governed by a preposition expressed or understood. Of the former kind are nú *now*, geó (iú), *formerly*, eft *again*, get (iet), *yet*, be *by*, &c. for *for*, tó *to*, ac *but*, gif *if*, &c. Of the latter kind, (to take the cases in order) are the accusatives on-weg (a-weg) *a-way*; on-bæc (under-, ofer-bæc) *a-back, back*; (on-)ge-mang *a-mong*; on-gean (a-gen) *a-gain, a-against*; ealne-weg *al-way*.

-e (abl. or dat.) forms many adverbs from nouns, adjectives,<sup>(1)</sup> &c. ; as, *on-riht-e* (L. *rect-e*) <sup>(2)</sup> *a-riht a-right, rightly*; *lang-e* (L. *long-e*) *long*; *mid-ealle altogether*; *be-dæle partly*; *tó-sóðe in sooth, truly*; *of-dúne, a-dún a-down, down*; *tó-gædere* (*æt-gædere*), *tó-somne* (*æt-somne*, G. *zu-sammen*), *to-gether*.

*líc-e* (E. *-ly*; the same, borrowed from adjectives in *-líc*): *sceort-líc-e short-ly*, *strang-líc-e strong-ly*.

Other ablatives are the conjunctions *for-þý therefore*; (*for-*) *hwý? (for) why?*; datives *for-þám because*, *tó-þón-þæt in order that*, *síð-þán* (G. *seit-dem*) *since*.

*-um, -on* (abl. or dat. plur.): (*on*) *hwíl-um, hwíl on whilome, whiles*, *wundr-um wondrously*, *hwyrft-um by turns*, *sticce-mælum*<sup>(3)</sup> *piece-meal*, *be lytl-um and lytl-um by little and little*, *furð-um (-on) even, just*, *on-sundr-on in-sunder, a-sunder*.

*-es* (genitive): *niht-es*<sup>(4)</sup> (*νυκτ-ος*, G. *nacht-s*) *of a night, by night*, *will-es willingly*, *néd-es of necessity, needs*, *eall-es altogether*, *nall-es by no means*, *sóð es of a truth*, *tó-gean-es against*, *tó-midd-es amidst*.

*-a, -unga, -inga* (perhaps gen. plur.): *gear-a of*

(1) Those in *-h* and *-u* take *g* and *w*, as, *heáh, heáge*; *nearu, nearwe*: see Adjectives Def., and Indef. I.

(2) L. adverbs in *-e* were perhaps ablatives, like those in *-o*, as *ver-o* and the like.

(3) *Stic* (II. 1) *piece, bit, (steak)* (G. *stück*); *mæl* (II. 3) (G. *mahl*) *meal, time of eating, milking cows, &c.*

(4) The proper genitives of *niht*, *will*, and *néd* (*neód*) are *nihte*, *willan*, *néde*; at an early stage of the language, all nouns formed the gen. in *-es* or *s*; comp. the many Gr. and L. genitives in *-ος* &c. and *-is*.

*yore*, son-a *soon*, *forthwith*, eall-unga *altogether*, hol-  
inga *in vain*, yrr-inga *angrily*.

-an (an oblique case) : niw-an *of late*, newly, for-an  
*before*, on-midd-an, a-midd-an *a-mid*, wið-út-an  
*without*, búf-an<sup>(5)</sup> (for be-úf-an) *a-bove*; a-bút-an (for  
on-be-út-an) *a-bout*, &c.

Other adverbial terminations are :—

-der (*motion to*) : hi-der *hi-ther*, þi-der *thi-ther*,  
hwi-der *whi-ther*.

-on, -an (*motion from*) : heon-on *hence*, þan-on  
*thence*, hwan-on *whence*.

-r, -ra, -e, &c. (*rest in*) : her *here*, þær (para) *there*  
hwær (hwar) *where*; inn-e *within*, út-e *without*.

## VI.—Composition.<sup>(6)</sup>

The A. S. language, like the Greek, German, &c.  
abounds in compound words, of which the last part com-  
monly settles the part of speech. Nouns and adjectives  
are usually compounded together, and with verbs, with-  
out change, as in English, &c.; as, fíc-treow *fig-tree*,  
heáfod-man (G. haupt-mann) *head-man*, captain, heáh-  
sacerd, *high-priest*, bisceop-ricé *bishop-ric*, stæf-  
cræft *letter-craft*, grammár, medo-ærn<sup>(7)</sup> *mead-hall*,  
þeow-boren *slave-born*, stede-fæst *stead-fast*, bealo-  
full *baleful*, snáw-hwít (G. schnee-weiss) *snow-white*,  
íren-heard (G. eisen-hart) *as hard as iron*, lif-fæstan

<sup>(5)</sup> D. boven; "Oranje boven!" <sup>(6)</sup> See Rask, pp. 113—117.

<sup>(7)</sup> Or -ern; sealt-ern salt-ern.

to *quicken*, ful-fremman (G. voll-bringen) to *ful-fil*, and the like.

A noun, however, standing first, is often put in the genitive case, especially in local names; as, *dómes-dæg doom's-day*, *hilde-byrne war-corslet*; *Engla-land England, land of the Angles*; *Cant-wara-burh Canterbury, burgh of the Kenters*; *Cinges-tún King's-town, Kingston*; *Beorminga-hám Birming-ham, home of the Beormings*; *Oxena-ford Ox-ford, ford of oxen*; from *dóm*, *hild*, *Engle*, *Cant-ware*, *cing*, *Beorming*, *oxa*. One or each part is sometimes shortened, &c.; as, *frum-cenned first-born*, *æl-beorht all-bright*, *mild-heort mild-hearted*; from *fruma beginning*, *eall*, *milde*, *heorte*. Prepositions and adverbs commonly stand before verbs, &c. without change, as in English, German, &c.; as, *ymb-gang (G. um-gang) circuit*; *purh-faran (G. durch-fahren) to go through*; *wið-standan (G. wider-stehen) to with-stand*; *tó-cyme coming to (L. ad-ventus)*; *fore-rynel fore-runner*; *fore-mihtig (L. præ-potens) very mighty*; *úp-riht (G. auf-recht) up-right*; *úp-stígan<sup>(1)</sup> (G. auf-steigen) to go up*; *niðer-stígan (G. nieder-steigen) to go down*; *ford-gán (G. fort-gehen) to go forth*; *út-lág out-law (L. ex-lex)*; *ofer-cuman to over-come*; *ofer-mód (G. über-muth) pride*; *under-niman (G. unter-nehmen) to under-take*; *fram-ge-wítan to depart from*; *in-láedan (G. ein-leiten) to lead in*; *geond-geótan to pour through, suffuse*; *on-gean-cyrran to turn back again*; *of-sceótan*

(<sup>1</sup>) *Stígan* (G. *steigen*) answers to L. *scandere*; *ad-scendere*, *descendere*, &c.

(G. ab-schiessen) *to shoot off*; æfter-fyligend *successor, one who follows after*; mid-síðian *to travel with*; sundor-spræc *conversation apart*; samod-(sam-)-wyrcean *to work together, co-operate*.

The preposition be, bi, usually becomes big in composition; as, big-spel (G. bei-spiel) *example, parable*; big-standan (G. bei-stehen) *to stand by*; it may thus be known from the particle be, which sometimes becomes bi; as, be-standan, bi-standan (G. be-stehen) *to stand on, occupy*.<sup>(2)</sup> On often becomes an- or a-; as, on-bíðan, an-bíðan, a-bíðan *to a-bide*. Æt and oð in composition often mean *from, away*; as, æt-berstan *to burst away*, oð-yrnan *to run away, escape*, like G. ent-bersten, -rinnen.

Particles are also freely compounded together.

Prepositions, and other particles in composition, are often parted from their verb, as in German; but the same rules can hardly be given in A. S.

In general, þurh, úp, niðer, tó, forð, út, in, on, bi (big) are separable; a-, an-, be-, ge-, ed-, un-, or-, mis-, oð, and-, wið, sam-, for-, to-, are inseparable; æt, of, &c. are rarely separated.

## CHAPTER VII.

### I.—Syntax.

THE A.S. Syntax in general resembles that of Greek and German; but it bears the closest likeness, with some remarkable points of difference from that and other

<sup>(2)</sup> See Formation of Particles.

tongues, to the Latin, with which it should be compared throughout. The concords agreeing in A. S. with those in Latin, &c. need not be repeated. With regard to the construction of sentences it may be observed, that the verb often stands after both the subject and the object, coming last of all, as for the most part in German; as,

On þære tíde þa Gotan wið Rómana-ríce gewinn úp-a-hófon, *at that time the Goths raised up war against the Roman empire.*

þa Darius ge-seáh þæt he ofer-wunnen beón wolde, þá wolde he hine sylfne on þám ge-feohte for-spillan, *when Darius saw that he should be overcome, then he would lose his life in the fight.*

We sceolon mid biternysse sóðre be-hreowsunge úre mód ge-cláensian, *we must with the bitterness of true repentance cleanse our mind.*

Often, however, sentences are in this and other respects framed as in English; and on the whole this part of the grammar will not prove difficult to the student, and may be better learned from reading than from any rules that might be given.

---

## II.—Syntax of Nouns.

Nouns of time answering to the question, “how long?” are put in the accusative or ablative; as,

Ealle wucan *all the week.*

Þrý dagas, or prym dagum *three days.*

Answering to the question “when?” they stand in the ablative, dative with on, or genitive; as,

þý feorðan dógore *on the fourth day.*

On þissum geare *in this year.*

Ussa tída<sup>(1)</sup> *in our times.*

Measure, value, age, and the like, are used in the genitive ; as,

Twegra elna heáh *two ells high.*

Ynces lang *an inch long.*

þreora mila brád *three miles broad.*

Sex peninga wyrðe *worth six pence.*

A'nes geares lamb *a lamb of one year.*

The matter to which a measure, &c. is applied, stands in the genitive ; as,

Hund mittena hwætes *a hundred measures of wheat.*

Hund-teontig punda goldes *a hundred pounds of gold.*

It sometimes remains unchanged ; as,

Twegen marc gold<sup>(2)</sup> *two marks of gold.*

Quality, praise, or blame, stands in the genitive ; as,

A'r-wyrðre ylðo *of venerable age.*

Fægeres and-wlitan *of fair countenance.*

Two ablatives or datives are used absolutely like the L. double ablative ; as,

Ge-togene þý wæpne<sup>(3)</sup> *the weapon (being) drawn.*

A-fundenum sceápe *the sheep (being) found.*

Two datives, the latter governed by tó, are used like the L. double dative ; as,

þæt he ús tó fultume sý<sup>(4)</sup> *that he may be (for) a help to us.*

(<sup>1</sup>) Comp. F. de nos temps.

(<sup>2</sup>) G. zwei mark gold.

(<sup>3</sup>) L. stricto telo ; ove repertâ.

(<sup>4</sup>) L. ut nobis auxilio sit.

The means or instrument stands in the ablative or dative, with or without the preposition *mid* ; as,

Hine *mid þý heofon-lícan weg-nyste ge-trym-mende* *strengthening himself with that heavenly viaticum.*

þý *betstan leóðe ge-glenged* *adorned with the best lay.*

Heó hí *sylfe mid cyne-lícum reáfe ge-fræt wode* *she adorned herself with royal attire.*

Híg *sprecað niwum tungum* *they shall speak with new tongues.*

### III.—Syntax of Adjectives.

Adjectives in general, especially those denoting want, desire, knowledge, remembrance, and the like, have a genitive case of the noun which defines them, and often stand after it ; as,

Feos wana *wanting money.*

Freónda leás *lacking friends.*

Hrægles þearfa *devoid of raiment.*

Earn ætes georn *an eagle eager for food.*

Ac ic heora eom swíðe gifre *but I am very greedy of them.*

Bóca gleáw *skilful in books.*

Un-wís God-cundan Naman *ignorant of the Divine Name.*

Hí næron his ge-myndige *they were not mindful of him.*

Módes blíðe *blithe of mood.*

Sídes wérig *weary of travel.*

Mægenes strang *strong of might.*

I'sig feðera *icy of wings.*

They sometimes take an ablative ; as,

Wintrum geong *young in years.*

Blind bām eágum *blind of both eyes.*

Adjectives denoting pleasure, profit, injury, and the like, govern a dative ; as,

þeáh he him leóf wære *though he were dear to them.*

Eallum and-feng *acceptable to all.*

þæt he mynster-lícum cumum ge-þensum wære  
*that he might be serviceable to the monastic guests.*

Rinca ge-hwylcum un-nyt *useless to every man.*

Derigend-líc býð þe *it will be hurtful to thee.*

Full full, wyrðe *worthy*, scyldig *guilty*, have an  
ablative, dative, or genitive ; as,

Full Hálguum Gáste *full of the Holy Ghost.*

Full deádra bána *full of dead bones.*

Se wyrhta is wyrðe his metes *the workman is  
worthy of his meat.*

Se býð dóme scyldig *he shall be guilty of the judg-  
ment.*

He is deáðes scyldig *he is guilty of death.*

Ge-líc *like*, has a dative or genitive ; as,

Híg synd ge-líce þám cildum<sup>(1)</sup> *they are like the  
children.*

Nán man nis his ge-líca *no man is like him.*

The word which determines a comparative stands be-  
fore it in the ablative neuter ; as,

þrym mundum hýrra *three hands higher.*

(1) Thus L. *similes pueris* ; *ejus similis.*

Micle má *much more.*

þý weorðra *so much the worthier.*

Comparatives require either þonne or þe *than*, with a nominative, or an ablative or genitive without ; as,

Ge synd sélran þonne manega spearwan, or ge synd beteran manigum spearwum *ye are better than many sparrows.*

Oðer-healf gear læs þe þrittig wintra *a year and a half less than thirty years.*

Se is his mára *he is greater than him.*

Superlatives take a genitive ; as,

Ealra wyrta mæst *greatest of all herbs.*

---

\* \* \* For the Syntax of Pronouns see Chapter IV.

---

#### IV.—Syntax of Verbs.

Verbs, as in other tongues, agree in number with their subject; after ælc þára (þæra) þe *each of them that, every one that*, however, the singular is used, agreeing with ælc and not with þára; as,

Ælc þára þe tó me cymð (lit. *each of them that cometh—*) *every one that cometh to me.*

Swá ge-býrað ælcum þára þe winð *so it befitteeth every one that contendeth.*

With a noun of multitude the verb may be either singular or plural; as,

þá com micel mænigeo and tó him éfston *then came a great multitude and hastened to him.*

Transitive verbs in general, as in other tongues, govern the direct object in the accusative case ; as,

Lufa þínne nextan *love thy neighbour.*

Seó sáe ge-tácnad̃ þás and-weardan woruld *the sea betokeneth this present world.*

Axian *to ask*, takes a double accusative ; as,

Nán ne dorste hine nán þing máre axian *no one durst ask him anything more.*

Verbs of naming have an accusative of the object named, and a nominative of the name ; as,

þone un-ge-met líce eargan þú miht hátan hara *the immoderately timid thou mayest call hare.*

Rædan *to rule*, a-bregdan *to draw (a weapon)*, and to-bregdan *to cast off (sleep)*, govern the ablative ; as,

þenden hí þý ríce rædan móston *while they might rule the realm.*

A'n of þám þý sweorde a-bræd *one of them drew his sword.*

Mid-þý heó þá þý slæpe to-bræd *when she then had cast off sleep.*

Verbs of bidding, forbidding, serving, following, obeying, consenting to, opposing, pleasing, trusting, injuring, profiting, escaping from ; likewise for-swerian *to forswear*, cídán *to chide*, árian *to honour, spare*, beorgan *to save, defend*, déman *to judge*, oleccan *to flatter*, \*stillan<sup>(1)</sup> *to still*, fylstan *to succour*, efen-læcan *to imitate*, ge-neá-læcan *to approach*, and heorcnian *to hearken to*, govern the dative ; as,

Un-clænum gástum be-být *he commandeth the unclean spirits.*

Ne for-beóde ge him *forbid him not.*

(1) The verbs marked thus \* sometimes govern the accusative.

Ne mæg nán man twám hláf-ordum þeowian *no man can serve two lords.*

Heó him þenode *she served him.*

þa sceáp him fyligeað *the sheep follow him.*

þá se wer hýrde his waldende *then the man obeyed his ruler.*

Gif þú þonne Dryhtne ge-hýrsumast *if thou then obeyest the Lord.*

þes ne ge-þwærede heora ge-þeahte *this (man) agreed not to their counsel.*

Ge þafiað eówera fædera weorcum *ye consent to your fathers' works.*

Him ne wið-stent nán þing *no thing withstandeth him.*

Nemne him wyrd for-stóde *unless fate had opposed him.*

Eallum his wordum wið-cwædon and wið wunn-on *(they) contradicted and opposed all his words.*

Pilatus wolde þám folce ge-cweman *Pilate would please the people.*

Heó on-gan his wordum truwan *she began to trust his words.*

Ne derode Iobe náht þæs deófles costnung, ac fremode *the devil's temptation hurt Job no whit, but profited him.*

Hú heó þám feónd-lícum gástum oð-fleón mage *how she may escape from the hostile spirits.*

Síð-þán hí feóndum oð-faren hæfdon *when they had escaped from the enemies.*

Ac he sige-wæpnum for-sworen hæfde *but he had forsworn the weapons of victory.*

Gif þín bróðer syngað cíd him *if thy brother sinneth chide him.*

þú nelt árian þære stówe *thou wilt not spare the place.*

Beorh þínum feore *save thy life.*

Démað him be eówre æ *judge him by your law.*

He wolde him oleccan mid his hearpan *he would flatter them with his harp.*

Yðum stilde *he stilled the waves.*

Him fylston wel gistas síne *his guests succoured him well.*

Uton for-þý ge-efen-læcan þisum men *let us therefore imitate this man.*

þám deáðe ge-nealæcende *drawing nigh to death.*

Ypolitus heora wordum heorcnaðe *Hippolytus hearkened to their words.*

Verbs of motion, and likewise on-drædan *to dread*, often have a redundant dative of the subject; as,

Gá þe forð<sup>(1)</sup> *go forth.*

He him hám-weard ferde *he journeyed homeward.*

Him þá Scyld ge-wát *then Scyld departed.*

He him on-dræt<sup>(2)</sup> monigne feónd *he dreads many a foe.*

Wealdan *to wield, govern*, \*on-fón *to receive*, \*milt-sian *to pity*, hlystan *to listen to*, helpan *to help*, \*ge-lýfan *to believe*, wið-sacan *to deny*, ge-feón *to rejoice at*, \*hrínan *to touch*, with its compounds; likewise

(1) Hence "hie thee home," and the like.

(2) O. "I fear me."

wesan *to be*, when implying possession, govern the dative or genitive; as,

Ætla weóld Hunum *Attila ruled the Huns.*

Þe on þám dagum ge-weóld cyne-dómes *who in those days ruled the kingdom.*

On-fóh þissum fulle *receive this cup.*

þá on-fengon híg þæs feos *then took they the money.*

He miltsað úrum gyltum *he hath compassion on our sins.*

Ge-miltsa mín *have pity on me.*

Hwý hlyste ge him? *why listen ye to him?*

Hlyste he gódes rádes *let him listen to good counsel.*

He him helpan ne mæg *he cannot help him.*

Ge-help þú earmra manna *help thou poor men.*

For-þám-þe þú ne ge-lýfdest mínum wordum *because thou believedst not my words.*

We ne sculon þæs ge-lýfan *we must not believe that.*

Iulianus his Cristen-dóme wið-sóc *Julian denied his Christianity.*

Þry-wa þú wið-sæcst mín *thrice thou shalt deny me.*

Secg weorce ge féh *the warrior rejoiced in the work.*

Cwen weorces ge-feáh *the queen was glad of the work.*

Ne him hrínan ne mehte fær-grípe flódes *nor might the sudden gripe of the flood touch him.*

þá æt-hrán he hyra eágena *then touched he their eyes.*

þá him wæs manna þearf<sup>(1)</sup> *since he had need of men.*

þa þing þe þæs Caseres synd *the things that are the Cæsar's.*

Verbs of desiring, needing, tempting, wondering at, using, enjoying, \*remembering, \*forgetting, caring for, ceasing from; together with cepan *to take, keep, &c.*, wénan *to hope for*, \*neósian *to visit*, on-byrian *to taste*, ehtan *to persecute*, oð-sacan *to deny*, earnian *to earn, deserve*, gilpan *to boast of*, fægnian *to rejoice at*, \*on-drædan *to dread*; likewise bídian (bídan) *to hide, wait for*, with its compounds, govern the genitive; as,

We ge-wilniað friðes wið eów *we desire peace with you.*

þæs ic wilnige and wisce *that I desire and wish.*

þæt mæden gyrnde deáðes *the maiden yearned for death.*

Ne be-þurfon lāces þa þe hále synd *they need not a leech that are whole.*

U're man-dryhten mægenes be-hófað *our liege lord requires strength.*

Hwý fandige ge mín? *why tempt ye me?*

For-þón ic his cost node *therefore I tempted him.*

We wundriað þæs wlítan þære sunnan *we wonder at the beauty of the sun.*

(1) L. illi hominum opus erat.

Eówre fýnd wafiað eówer *your foes shall be amazed at you.*

Brúc þisses beáges, and þisses hrægles neót *enjoy this ring, and use this dress.*

Ne ge-mune ic nánra his synna *I will remember none of his sins.*

Ne ge ne ge-þencað þæra fíf hláfa? *and do ye not remember the five loaves?*

þú hæfst þára wæpna for-giten *thou hast forgotten the weapons.*

Hí þæs ne gýmdon *they cared not for that.*

Feores hí ne róhton *for life they recked not.*

Héddon here-reáfes *they heeded the war-spoil.*

Ge-swíc þínes wópes *cease thy weeping.*

Sceolde æðeling ealdres linnan<sup>(1)</sup> *the noble must part from life.*

Hí nánre bricge ne cepton *they kept to no bridge.*

He nolde nanes fleámes cepan *he would not take to flight.*

Ne þearf ic ænigre áre wénan *I may not hope for any honour.*

Ge-wát þá neósian heán húses (*he*) *then departed to visit the lofty mansion.*

On-byrige metes<sup>(2)</sup> *let him taste meat.*

Paulus ehte Cristenra manna *Paul persecuted Christian men.*

Hwá oð-sæcð þæs? *who denies that?*

Seó þeód þe his earnað *the people that deserreth it.*

(1) Linnan sometimes has a dative.

(2) We say also "taste of—."

Hú ne gilpst þú þonne heora fægeres?<sup>(3)</sup> *boastest thou not then of their fairness?*

Ne sceal he fægnian þæs folces worda *he must not rejoice at the people's words.*

Híg on-dredon þæra Israhela tó-cymes *they dreaded the coming of the Israelites.*

Se hýr-man his ed-leánes an-bídað *the hireling awaiteth his reward.*

Verbs of granting, likewise tilian *to till, get*, for-wyrnan *to deny*, þancian *to thank*, stýrian (stýran) *to chastise*, have a dative of the person or near object, and a genitive of the thing or far object; as,

Se hálga him þæs ge-úðe *the saint granted him that.*

þá þúhte me hefig-tyme þe þæs tó tidienne *then it seemed to me troublesome to grant thee that.*

þá Metod on-láh Medum and Persum aldor-dómes *when the Lord bestowed the supremacy on the Medes and Persians.*

þá Noe on-gan him ætes tilian *then Noah began to get him food.*

þe him ne for-wyrnde cyne-líces weorðscipes *who denied him not kingly honour.*

Apollonius hire þæs þancode *Apollonius thanked her for that.*

He him þæs þinges stýrede *he chastised him for that thing.*

Verbs of depriving, likewise teón &c. *to accuse*,

(3) A neuter adjective used and declined as a noun.

have an accusative of the near object, and an ablative or genitive of the far object; as,

Nelle ic þa rincas rihte be-næman *I will not deprive the warriors of their right.*

Heó hit ne mæg his ge-wittes be-reáfian *she cannot bereave it of its understanding.*

Dyrnum ge-þingum be-togen *charged with secret practices.*

Hwý týhð ús úre hláf-ord swá micles falses? *why doth our lord accuse us of so great deceit?*

Biddan *to ask for*, has an accusative of the near, and a genitive of the far object; as

Gif his sunu hine bitt hláfes *if his son asketh him for bread.*

Some impersonal verbs govern the person affected in the accusative or dative: hit is often left out; as,

Hyngrað hine <sup>(1)</sup> *he is hungry.*

Seó swefen þe hine mætte *the dream that he dreamed.*

Hire ge-býrað *it becometh her.*

Hit lícode Herode *it pleased Herod.*

Him þúhte *it seemed to him* (lit. *him thought*).

Ne ge-wearð unc wið éenne pening? *did we not agree for a penny?*

Others have beside a genitive of the far object, after rules for other verbs; as,

þone weligan lyst an-wealdes *the rich lusteth for power.*

Næenne mon þæs ne tweóð *no man doubts of that.*

(1) Comp. G. es hungert ihn; es ge bührt ihr; ihm dünkte.

þe nánre be-hreowsunge ne be-hófað *thou needest no repentance.*

Him þæs ne sceamode *of that they were not ashamed.*

### V.—Syntax of Prepositions.

Prepositions, as in German, &c., require various oblique cases of the nouns before which they are placed; thus,

geond <i>through, throughout</i>	ymb(-e) <sup>(3)</sup>	} { <i>round,</i> <i>about.</i>
þurh <sup>(2)</sup> <i>through</i>	ymb-útan	
wið-æftan <i>behind</i>		

govern the accusative; as,

Gá geond wegas and hegas *go through the ways and hedges.*

þurh his micle ge-þyld *through his great patience.*

Wið-æftan þá burh *behind the town.*

Ymb þæs cyninges slege *about the slaying of the king.*

Ymb-útan þone weall *around the wall.*

The following govern the dative

be (bi, big) <sup>(4)</sup> <i>of, about, by</i>	in-tó <i>into</i>
of <i>off, from, of</i>	ær <i>ere, before</i>
fram <i>from, by</i>	feor <i>far from</i>
æt <i>at, to</i>	un-feor <sup>(5)</sup> <i>near</i>
tó <i>to</i>	neah (nean) <i>nigh</i>

<sup>(2)</sup> G. durch.

<sup>(3)</sup> Comp. ἀμφι, L. amb-, G. um.

<sup>(4)</sup> Comp. ἐπι, G. bei; ἀπ-ο, L. ab, D. af, G. ab-; L. ad; G. zu, &c.

<sup>(5)</sup> Lit. un-far; G. un-fern.

ge-hende *near, handy*æfter *after*búfan } *above*

on-úfan }

be-æftan (bæftan) } *abaft,*be-hindan } *behind*be-heonan *on this side*bútan <sup>(1)</sup> *without, outside*be-twynan *between*tó-emnes *along*tó-middes } *amid*

on-middan }

binnan<sup>(2)</sup> }wið- } *within,*

on- }

-innan } *inside*æt- } *foran before*

tó- }

tó-weard *toward*tó-eácan *besides.*Be þám heáh-fædere *concerning the patriarch.*Be mínes fæder leáfe *by my father's leave.*Far of þínum lande *depart from thy country.*Of ánre úp-flóran *off an upper floor.*Æt þám burnan<sup>(3)</sup> *at the brook.*Fram cild-háde *from childhood.*Gá tó þínum húse *go to thy house.*Þá híg in-tó þære byrgene eódon *then they went into the tomb.*Ær sunnan setl-gange *before the setting of the sun.*He wæs him feor *he was far from him.*Un-feor þám húse *near the house.*Neah þám forða *nigh the ford.*Ge-hende þære ceastre *near the town.*Æfter þám ge-feohte *after the fight.*Búfan þære heofenan *above the heaven.*Bæftan þære mænigeo *behind the multitude.*Be-heonan þære stræte *on this side the street.*<sup>(1)</sup> D. buiten, O. bout, but.<sup>(2)</sup> G. binnen, S. ben.<sup>(3)</sup> S. burn.

Bútan þære wíc-stówe *outside the camp.*

Bútan ælcum an-ginne *without any beginning.*

Bútan wífum and cildum *besides women & children.*

Be-twynan þám twám mynstrum<sup>(4)</sup> *between the two monasteries.*

Tó-middes þám wæterum *amid the waters.*

On-middan þám treowe *in the midst of the tree.*

Binnan þám ge-telde *within the tent.*

Æt-foran his þrym-setle *before his glory-seat.*

Tþo-weard þám háligdóme<sup>(5)</sup> *toward the sanctuary.*

Tó-eácan þám fodre *over and above the fodder.*

Tó sometimes has a genitive ; as,

Tó middes dæges *at mid-day* : likewise in several compound prepositions above and below.

And-lang *along* (like G. ent-lang) governs the genitive ; as,

And-lang þæs wéstenes *along the desert.*

The following govern the accusative or dative ; the former usually, as in Latin, &c., when motion to, the latter when motion from, or rest in, a place, is signified : but this rule is not strictly followed in A. S.

fore <sup>(6)</sup>	} <i>before</i>	on <i>on, in, into</i>
be-foran		in <i>in, into</i>
on-bútan	<i>about, around</i>	(on-)ge-mang <i>a-mong</i>
oð	<i>unto, till</i>	be-tweox <sup>(7)</sup> <i>betwixt, among</i>
úppon	<i>upon</i>	úton } <i>outside,</i>
innon	<i>within</i>	wiðútan } <i>without</i>

(4) Hence *minster* ; G. *münster* ; all from L. *monasterium*.

(5) Hence O. *halidom* : “ by my halidom ! ”

(6) Comp. *προ*, L. *pro*, G. (be-)vor ; G. *an* ; *ἐν*, L. and G. *in* ; *ὑπερ*, L. *super*, G. *über*, D. *over* ; G. *unter*, *gegen*, &c.

(7) Like *b e - t w y n a n* from *t w á* ; comp. G. *zwi-schen* from *zwei*.

ofer over	tó-geanes } against,
under under	on-gean } toward
	be-geondan beyond.

Fore Healf-denes hilde-wísan *before Healfdene's war-chiefs.*

þá he þá be-foran þone gramæn cyning ge-læd  
wæs *when he then was led before the cruel king.*

Ic eom a-send be-foran hine *I am sent before him.*

Be-foran eallum folce *before all the people*

On-bútan þæt cealf *around the calf.*

Cn-bútan þám weofode *about the altar.*

Oð Rin þá eá *unto the river Rhine.*

Oð Daniele þám witegæn *till Daniel the prophet.*

On þá ealdan wísan *in the old wise.*

He sylf oð-fleáh on Asiam *he himself escaped into Asia.*

On þám heán munte *on the high mount.*

Heó hine in þæt mynster on-feng *she received him into the monastery.*

In ge-limp-lícre tíde *at a fitting time.*

Ic eów sende swá sceáp ge-mang wulfas *I send you as sheep among wolves.*

On-ge-mang óðrum mannum *among other men.*

Be-tweox his magas *among his kin's-folk.*

Be-tweox þære ealdan æ and þære niwan *betwixt the old law and the new.*

þá feoll he úppon hine *then fell he upon him.*

Uppon ánum beáme *upon a beam.*

Heó be-seáh innon þá byrgene *she looked into the tomb.*

Innon þære healle *within the hall.*

Hí comon ofer þá sæ *they came over the sea.*

Micel man-cwealm be-com ofer þære Roman-  
iscre leóde *a great plague came upon the Roman people.*

Under þære fæstnesse *under the firmament.*

Wið-útan his dóm-ern *outside his judgment-hall.*

Wið-útan þám díce *without the ditch.*

Tó-geanes his fýnd he gæð *he goeth against his foes.*

Hí þá ferdon tó-geanes þám hæðenum *they  
then marched against the heathen.*

Feohtende on-gean hine *fighting against him.*

þá com him þær on-gean *then came there to meet  
him.*

Be-geondan Iordanem *beyond Jordan.*

Be-geondan þám mere *beyond the lake.*

For for, and mid<sup>(1)</sup> with, govern the accusative,  
ablative, or dative ; as,

For eall Cristen folc ge-biddan *to pray for all  
Christian people.*

For þý máne *for that crime.*

For hwylcum intingan? *for what cause?*

Mid þá fore-sprecenan fæmnan<sup>(2)</sup> *with the fore-  
said damsel.*

Mid þý áðe *with the oath.*

Mid his ágenum life *with his own life.*

Wið against, with, &c. governs the accusative, dative,  
or genitive ; as,

Wið þá reádan sæ *by the Red Sea.*

Wið þín folc *toward thy people.*

þa assan wið hí læswodon *the assēs were grazing  
with them.*

(<sup>1</sup>) Comp. G. für ; μετα, G. mid.

(<sup>2</sup>) L. femina.

A'na wið eallum *alone against all.*

Eáge wið eágan, tóð wið téð *eye for eye, tooth for tooth.*

Wið þæs holtes<sup>(1)</sup> *toward the wood.*

He éfste wið þæs heres *he hastened against the army.*

A preposition sometimes stands after its case; as,

Hí him mid sæton *they sate with him.*

Him bi twegen beámas stódon *by him stood two trees.*

It is sometimes parted from it altogether, and placed either next before the verb, or last of all; as,

þe he man-cyn mid a-lýsde *with which he redeemed mankind.*

þá ge-nea-læhte him án man tó *then drew nigh to him a man.*

Ymb-útan is sometimes divided; as,

Ymb han-cred útan *about cock-crow.*

Wið and weard are sometimes used, the one before, the other after an accusative or genitive; as,

Wið heofonas weard<sup>(2)</sup> *toward the heavens.*

Wið Petres weard *toward Peter.*

## VI.—Syntax of Conjunctions.

The following conjunctions require the verb to be in the indicative mode:

and <sup>(3)</sup> *and.*

eác *eke, also.*

(<sup>1</sup>) P. holt, G. holz.

(<sup>2</sup>) Comp. the use of L. ad—versus.

(<sup>3</sup>) Comp. G. und, auch, so, da, dann, denn, da—da, &c.

ac <i>but</i>	odðe—	} odðe { <i>either</i> — <i>or</i>
swá, swá-swá <i>so, as</i>	óðer-twega—	
swá—swá <i>so—as</i>	óðer-pára—	
pá } <i>then</i>	ge—	} ge { <i>as well—as</i> <i>both—and</i>
þonne }	ægðer-ge,	
pá } <i>when, as</i>	náðer-ne—ne <i>neither—nor</i>	
pá-pá }	swá-þeáh	} yet, <i>never-</i> <i>theless</i>
(for-)hwý <i>why?</i>	(þeáh-)hwæðere	
mid-þý(-þe) <sup>(4)</sup> } <i>when,</i>	ná-læs—ac <i>not only—but</i>	
mid-þám(-þe) }	(for-)þý(-þe) } <i>for, because,</i>	
þenden <i>while</i>	for-þám(-þe) }	<i>therefore.</i>
síð-þán <i>since</i>		

The following require the subjunctive, though in general, as in Latin, in subordinate prepositions only:

þæt, þæt-te <sup>(5)</sup> <i>that</i>	od(-þæt) <i>until</i>
þeáh(-þe) <i>though</i>	þá-hwíle(-þe) <sup>(6)</sup> <i>(the) while</i>
swylce <i>as if</i>	ær
þonne } <i>when</i>	ær-þám(-þe) } { <i>ere,</i> <i>before</i>
hwænne }	hwæðer(-þe) <sup>(7)</sup> } <i>whether</i>
hwær }	sam—sam } <i>(—or)</i>
hwar }	gif <sup>(8)</sup> <i>if</i>
þý-læs(-þe) <i>lest</i>	nemne }
tó-þón-þæt <i>in order that</i>	nymðe } <i>unless</i>
á-þý—þe <i>so much the—as</i>	hú, hú-meta <i>how.</i>

(4) The particle þe is added or not at pleasure to several conjunctions.

(5) G. dass, D. dat ; G. doch, wann, wenn, &c.

(6) Hwíl is a noun, (II. 3.) *while, time* ; G. weile.

(7) Answering to ποτερον—ή, L. utrum—an ; like these hwæðer is properly a neuter pronoun.

(8) The conjunction gif has no more to do with the verb gifan than S. gin has with *given*, or O. an with unnan.

Hwæt dó ic þæt ic éce lif áge? *what shall I do that I may possess eternal life?*

Íc wát þæt hit býð sáwl and líc-homa *I know that it is soul and body.*

þeáh hwylc of deáðe a-ríse *though one arise from death.*

þeáh-þe ic sceal ealle wucan fæstan *though I shall fast all the week.*

Swylce þú hí ge-sceópe *as if thou hadst created them.*

þý-læs þú þínne fót æt stáne æt-sporne *lest thou dash thy foot against a stone.*

Tó-þón-þæt he his ríce ge-brædde *in order that he might extend his empire.*

A'-þý un-weorðra þe hine manige men for-seón *so much the unworthier because many men despise him.*

Oð-þæt þú cume tó þám fyrmestan *till thou come to the first.*

Oð-þæt se A-lýsend com *until the Redeemer came.*

þá-hwíle-þe ge leóht habban *while ye have light.*

þá-hwíle-þe he on life býð *while he is a-live.*

Ær-þám-þe se hana tuwa cráwe *before the cock crow twice.*

Ær-þám-þe ge hine biddað *before ye ask him.*

þonne þú þe ge-bidde *when thou prayest.*

þonne he hám cymð *when he cometh home.*

Sege ús hwænne þás þing ge-weorðon *tell us when these things shall come to pass.*

Ge nyton hwænne seó tíð is *ye know not when the time is.*

Ic axige hwær seó offrung síg *I ask where the offering is.*

Hwar synd þa nigene? *where are the nine?*

Sceáwa hwæðer hit síg þínes suna þe ne síg *look whether it be thy son's or be not.*

Sam hit sý sumor sam winter *whether it be summer or winter.*

Gif wén sý *if there be hope.*

Gif we secgað, of heofone—*if we say, of heaven—*

Nemne him wyrd for-stóde *unless fate had opposed him.*

þú sædest þæt þú ne mihte wítan hú-meta he his weólde *thou saidst that thou couldst not know how he ruled it.*

Hú Boetius hine singende ge-bæd *how Boëtius singing prayed.*

Bútan for *but* has an indicative, for *unless* a subjunctive; as,

Bútan ic wát *but I know.*

Bútan we gán *unless we go.*

Hú ne with an indicative, and hwæðer with a subjunctive, are used to make prepositions interrogative; as,

Hú ne dóð mán-fulle swá? *do not the wicked so?*

Hwæðer ge nú sécan gold on treowum *do ye now seek gold on trees?*

Cwyst þú, or segst þú? *sayest thou? cweðe ge say ye? &c.* serve the same purpose with an indicative; as,

Segst þú mæg se blinda þone blindan læðan?  
*may the blind lead the blind?*

Cweðe ge hæbbe ge sufol? *have ye meat?*

Uton (-an) with an infinitive, expresses a wish or intention; as,

Uton gán *let us go.*

The negative ne *not* stands (like L. non, ne, F. ne) before the verb; as,

Ne for-læt he eów *he will not forsake you.*

Two<sup>(1)</sup> or more negatives are often used, ne being usually prefixed to each word capable of taking it; as,

Ne wép þú ná *weep not.*

þá næs nán cræft þæt ic ne cúðe *then there was no art that I knew not.*

Se-þe nis náðer ne ge boren ne ge-sceapen fram nánum óðrum *who-is neither born nor created by any other.*

Bútan *but, only* takes ne before it; as,

We nabbað búton<sup>(2)</sup> fíf hláfas *we have but five loaves.*

## VII.—Syntax of Interjections.

Wá *wo* takes a dative; as,

Wá þám men!<sup>(3)</sup> *wo to the man!* where sý (beó) *be*, or býð *shall be* is understood.

(<sup>1</sup>) The doctrine, therefore, that “two negatives make an affirmative,” is as foreign to the true spirit of the English as it would be to that of the Greek language.

(<sup>2</sup>) Comp. F. nous n'avons que.

(<sup>3</sup>) L. vae homini! G. weh dem manne!

Wá is me<sup>(4)</sup>! *wo is me!*

On the other interjections, of which the following are the chief, nothing need be added:

lá! *O, oh, lo!*

ea-lá! *oh, halloo, alas!*

efne! *behold!*

wá-lá-wá (wei-lá-wei) *well-a-way!*

hwæt! *lo! indeed!*

Leóf<sup>(5)</sup> is used as an expletive; as,

Gea<sup>(6)</sup>, leóf, ic hæbbe *yea marry have I.*

(<sup>4</sup>) Οὐαι μοι ἔστι.

(<sup>5</sup>) Analogous to our P. and familiar use of the word *dear*.

(<sup>6</sup>) G. and D. ja.

## CHAPTER VIII.

### PROSE EXTRACTS.

---

N.B. Some words that have already occurred are not explained in the notes to this and the next chapter.

---

#### I.—*S. Matthew*, xii. 1—13.

---

\* \* The Gospels<sup>(1)</sup>, and parts of the Old Testament, were rendered into A. S. by one or more ecclesiastics named Ælfríc, in the 9th or 10th century; the former from the Vulgate, the latter from some other early Latin translation. The sense therefore, differs now and then from that of the original, and of our authorised version.

---

1. Se Hælend<sup>(2)</sup> fór on reste-dæg<sup>(3)</sup> ofer æceras<sup>(4)</sup>; sóð-lice his leorning-cnihtas<sup>(5)</sup> hyngrede, and híg on-gunnon<sup>(6)</sup> pluccian<sup>(7)</sup> þa ear and etan.

2. Sóð-lice þá þa sundor-hálgan<sup>(8)</sup> þæt ge-sáwon, hí

(1) The extracts from the Gospels are from Mr. Thorpe's edition, the only one founded on a collation of the best MSS.

(2) Hælend (II. 2.) *Saviour, healer* (G. Heiland), from *hálan to heal*: the Name Jesus is thus rendered throughout the A. S. Gospels.

(3) *Day of rest, sabbath*: rest II. 3; G. rast.

(4) Æcer (II. 2.) (*corn*) *field*; ἀγρός, L. ager, G. acker: hence *acre*.

(5) *Disciples*: cniht (II. 2.) *youth, servant*; hence *knight*: G. knecht *servant*; comp. L. puer.

(6) On-ginnan (III. 1.) *to be-gin*.

(7) I. f. *to pluck*; G. pflücken.

(8) Sundor-hálg (I. 2.) *Pharisee*, lit. *separate saint*.

cwædon tó him : Nú þíne leorning-cnihtas dód þæt him a-lýfed<sup>(1)</sup> nis reste-dagum tó dónne.

3. And he cwæð tó him : Ne rædde<sup>(2)</sup> ge hwæt Daid dyde þá hine hyngrede, and þa þe mid him wæron,

4. Hú he in-eóde on Godes hús, and æt þa offring-hlāfas<sup>(3)</sup> þe næron him a-lýfede tó etanne, búton þám sacerdum<sup>(4)</sup> ánum ?

5. Oððe ne rædde ge on þære æ, þæt þa sacerdas on reste-dagum on þám temple<sup>(5)</sup> ge-wemmad<sup>(6)</sup> þone reste-dæg, and synd búton leahtr<sup>(7)</sup> ?

6. Ic secge sóð-lice eow þæt þes<sup>(8)</sup> is mærra<sup>(9)</sup> þonne þæt templ.

7. Gif ge sóð-lice wiston hwæt is : Ic wille mild-heortnesse and ná on-sægdnesse<sup>(10)</sup>, ne ge-nidrode ge næfre un-scyldige.

8. Sóð-lice mannes sunu is eac reste-dæges hlāford<sup>(11)</sup>.

9. þá se Hælend þanon fór, he com in-tó heora gesomnunge<sup>(12)</sup> :

10. þá wæs þær án man se hæfde for-scruncene<sup>(13)</sup>

(<sup>1</sup>) A-lýfan (I. 2.) *to allow* ; G. er-lauben. (<sup>2</sup>) Rædan (I. 2.) *to read*.

(<sup>3</sup>) *Loaves of offering, show-bread* ; offering II. 3. hláf II. 2.

(<sup>4</sup>) Sacerd (II. 2.) *priest* · L. sacerdos. (<sup>5</sup>) Templ (III. 1.) *temple*.

(<sup>6</sup>) Ge-wemman (I. 2.) *to pollute, profane*.

(<sup>7</sup>) Leahtr (II. 2.) *crime, sin*

(<sup>8</sup>) *This man*.

(<sup>9</sup>) Mære (I.) *great, famous*.

(<sup>10</sup>) On-sægdnes (II. 3.) *sacrifice* ; on-secan *to offer*.

(<sup>11</sup>) II. 2. *lord* ; said to be from hláf *bread, loaf*, and ord *beginning, origin* ; that is, *giver of bread*. (<sup>12</sup>) *Assembly, synagogue* ; G. ver-sammlung.

(<sup>13</sup>) For-scrincan (III. 1.) *to shrink up, wither away* ; mark the intensive force of for-.

hand. And hīg ácsodon hine, þus cweðende : Is hit a-lýfed tó hælanne on reste-dagum ? þæt hīg wrégdon (·) hine.

11. He sæde him sód-lice : Hwylc man is of eow, þe hæbbe án sceáp, and gif hit a-fylð reste-dagum on pyt<sup>(2)</sup>, hú ne nimð he þæt, and hefd hit úp ?

12. Witod-lice<sup>(3)</sup> micle má man is sceápe betera<sup>(4)</sup> ; witod-lice hit is a-lýfed on reste-dagum wel tó dónne.

13. þá cwæð he tó þám men : Aðena<sup>(5)</sup> þíne hand. And he hí aðenede ; and heó wæs hál ge-woðen swá seó óðer.

## II.—S. Mark, vi. 32.

32. And on scip<sup>(6)</sup> stígende, hīg fóron on-sundron on wéste<sup>(7)</sup> stówe<sup>(8)</sup>.

33. And ge-sáwon hīg farende, and hīg ge-cneowon manega, and gangende of þám burgum<sup>(9)</sup>, þider urnon and him be-foran comon.

34. And þá se Hælend þanon eóde, he ge-seáh mic-ele mænigeo, and he ge-miltsode him, for-þám-þe hīg

(1) Wrégan (I. 2.) *to accuse, be-wray.*

(2) II. 2. *pit, hole* ; D. put, L. put-eus.

(3) *Verily, truly, for, but, therefore* ; a common expletive : from witian (I. 1.) *to decide.*

(4) Vulgate : “ *Quantò magis melior.* ”

(5) Aðenian (I. 1.) *to stretch out.*

(6) Comp. σκαφη, G. schiff, D. schip ; hence also *skiff.*

(7) Wéste (I.) *waste, desert* ; G. wüst, D. woest.

(8) Hence *stow* in local names, and *to stow, be-stow.*

(9) Burh (p. 19–20), G. burg (πυργος) *a (fortified) town, burgh.*

wæron swá-swá scép<sup>(1)</sup> þe nænne hyrde nabbað; and he on-gan híg fela læran<sup>(2)</sup>.

35. And þá hit micel ylding<sup>(3)</sup> wæs, his leorning-cnihtas him tó comon and cwædon:

36. Þeós stów is wéste, and tíma is forð-a-gán<sup>(4)</sup>; for-læt þás mænigeo, þæt híg faron on ge-hende túnas<sup>(5)</sup>, and him mete bycgon þæt híg eton<sup>(6)</sup>.

37. Þá cwæð he: Sylle<sup>(7)</sup> ge him etan. Þá cwædon híg: Uton gán, and mid twám hundred penigum<sup>(8)</sup> hláfas bycgan, and we him etan syllað.

38. Þá cwæð he. Hú fela hláfa<sup>(9)</sup> habbe ge? gáð and lociað<sup>(10)</sup>. And þá híg wiston híg cwædon: Fíf hláfas and twegen fixas.

39. And þá be-beád<sup>(11)</sup> se Hælend þæt þæt folc sæte ofer þæt gréne hig<sup>(12)</sup>.

40. And híg þá sæton, hundredum<sup>(13)</sup> and fiftigum.

41. And fíf hláfum and twám fixum on-fangenum<sup>(14)</sup>, he on heofon locode, and híg bletsode, and þa hláfas bræc, and sealde his leorning-cnihtum þæt híg tó-foran him a-setton; and twegen fixas him eallum dælde<sup>(15)</sup>.

(<sup>1</sup>) Two accusatives as with L. doceo.

(<sup>2</sup>) Lateness; delay; from eald.

(<sup>3</sup>) For sceáp • see p. 5.

(<sup>4</sup>) Gone forth; "far passed."

(<sup>5</sup>) Tún (II. 2.) village, town: originally enclosure, farm: comp. G. zaun hedge; D. tuin garden.

(<sup>6</sup>) Comp. ἐδεν, L. edere.

(<sup>7</sup>) Syllan (I. 3.) to give, sell.

(<sup>8</sup>) Penig (pening) (II. 2.) G. pennig.

(<sup>9</sup>) Gen: see p. 32.

(<sup>10</sup>) Locian (I. 1.) to look.

(<sup>11</sup>) Be-beóðan (III. 3.) to command.

(<sup>12</sup>) II. 1. hay; G. heu. Vulg. "super viride fœnum."

(<sup>13</sup>) By hundreds, &c.

(<sup>14</sup>) Abl. or dat. absolute, p. 75.

(<sup>15</sup>) Dælan (I. 2.) to deal, divide, distribute; G. theilen, D. deelen.

42. And hīg æton þá ealle, and ge-fyllede wurdon.

43. And hīg namon þæra hláfa and fixa láfa<sup>(1)</sup>, twelf wilian<sup>(2)</sup> fulle.

44. Sód-lice fíf þúsend manna þæra etendra wæron.

45. þá sona he nýdde<sup>(3)</sup> his leorning-cnihtas on scip stigan, þæt hīg him be-foran fóron ofer þone múðan<sup>(4)</sup> tó Bethsaida, oð he þæt folc for-lete<sup>(5)</sup>.

46. And þá he hīg for-let, he ferde<sup>(6)</sup> on þone munt<sup>(7)</sup>, and hine ána þar<sup>(8)</sup> ge-bæd<sup>(9)</sup>.

47. And þá æfen<sup>(10)</sup> wæs, þæt scip wæs on middre sæ, and he ána wæs on lande.

48. And he ge-seáh hīg on réwette<sup>(11)</sup> swincende<sup>(12)</sup>; him wæs wider-weard<sup>(13)</sup> wind<sup>(14)</sup>: and on niht, ymbe þá feorðan wæccan<sup>(15)</sup>, he com tó him ofer þá sæ gangende, and wolde hīg for-búgan<sup>(16)</sup>.

49. þá hīg hine ge-sáwon ofer þá sæ gangende, hīg wéndon þæt hit un-fæle<sup>(17)</sup> gást<sup>(18)</sup> wære, and hīg clypedon,

(1) Láf (II. 3.) *leaving, remnant*; láfian (I. 2.) *to leave*; λειπεῖν.

(2) Wilia (I. 2.) *basket*. (3) Nýðan (I. 2.) *to compel*; from neód.

(4) Múða (I. 2.) *mouth of a river*; here *lake*; Vulg. "fretum."

(5) For-lætan (II. 2.) *to forsake, abandon*, (G. ver-lassen, D. ver-laten), *send away*.

(6) Feran (I. 2.) *to go*.

(7) II. 2. *mount*: we have "a mountain."

(8) Þar=þær, þara.

(9) Ge-biddan (II. 1. reflect,) *to pray*.

(10) Æfen (II. 2.) *even*, G. abend: -ung (II. 3.) *evening*.

(11) Réwet (II. 2.) *rowing*; rówan (II. 2.) *to row*; D. roeijen.

(12) Swincan (III. 1.) *to labour*; O. *swink*.

(13) *Adverse, way-ward*; G. wider-wärtig.

(14) II. 2. G. & D. *wind*; L. vent-us.

(15) Wæcce (I. 3.) *watch*.

(16) III. 3. *avoid, pass by*.

(17) *Unclean*; fæle *pure, faithful*: fæl-s-ian *to purify*.

(18) Comp. G. *geist*, D. *geest*, S. *ghaist*.

50. Híg ealle hine ge-sáwon, and wurdon ge-drefede<sup>(1)</sup>. And sona he spræc tó him, and cwæð : Ge-lyfað ; ic hit eom<sup>(2)</sup> ; nelle ge<sup>(3)</sup> eów on-drædan.

51. And he on scip tó him eóde ; and se wind ge-swác<sup>(4)</sup> ; and híg þæs þe má<sup>(5)</sup> be-tweox him wundredon.

52. Ne on-geaton<sup>(6)</sup> híg be þám hláfum ; sóð-lice heora heorte wæs a-blend<sup>(7)</sup>.

53. And þá híg ofer seglodon, híg comon tó Genesaret and þar wícedon<sup>(8)</sup>.

54. And þá híg of scipe eódon, sona híg hine ge-cneówon ;

55. And eal þæt ríce be-farende<sup>(9)</sup>, híg on sæccingum<sup>(10)</sup> bæron þa un-truman<sup>(11)</sup>, þar híg hine ge-hýrdon.

56. And swá-hwar-swá he on wíc<sup>(12)</sup> odðe on túnas eóde, on stræton<sup>(13)</sup> híg þa un-truman ledon, and hine bædon þæt híg huru<sup>(14)</sup> his reáfes fnæd<sup>(15)</sup> æt-hrinon<sup>(16)</sup>. And swá fela swá hine æt-hrinon, híg wurdon hále.

(<sup>1</sup>) Drefan (I. 2.) *to trouble, offend.*

(<sup>2</sup>) Comp. G. ich bin es.

(<sup>3</sup>) L. nolite.

(<sup>4</sup>) Ge-swícan (III. 2.) *to cease.*

(<sup>5</sup>) *So much the more* ; G. des-to mehr.

(<sup>6</sup>) On-gitan (II. 1.) *to understand.*

(<sup>7</sup>) A-blendan (I. 2.) *to blind* ; blind blind.

(<sup>8</sup>) Wícian (I. 1.) *to dwell* : see wíc below.

(<sup>9</sup>) Be-faran=be-feran, p. 55.

(<sup>10</sup>) Sæccing (II. 3.) *sacking, bed.*

(<sup>11</sup>) *Diseased, infirm* ; trum firm.

(<sup>12</sup>) Wíc (II. 1.) *dwelling, village* ; L. vic-us : hence *wich* and *wick* in local names ; D. wijk.

(<sup>13</sup>) Stræt (II. 3.) *street* ; G. strasse, D. straat.

(<sup>14</sup>) *At least, at all events.*

(<sup>15</sup>) *Hem.*

(<sup>16</sup>) Æt-hrínan (III. 3.) *to touch.*

III.—*S. Luke*, xx. 9—25.

9. He on-gan þá þis big-spel<sup>(1)</sup> tó þám folce cweðan : Sum man plantode<sup>(2)</sup> him wín-geard<sup>(3)</sup>, and hine ge-sette<sup>(4)</sup> mid tilium ( ), and he wæs him feor manegum tíðum<sup>(6)</sup>.

10. þá on tíde he sende his þeów tó þám tilium, þæt híg him sealdon of þæs wín-geardes wæstmē ; þá swungon<sup>(7)</sup> híg þone and ídelne<sup>(8)</sup> hine for-leton.

11. þá sende he óðerne þeów ; þá beóton híg þone, and mid teónum<sup>(9)</sup> ge-wæcende<sup>(10)</sup> hine for-leton ídelne.

12. þá sende he þryddan ; þá wurpon híg út þone ge-wundodne<sup>(11)</sup>.

13. þá cwæð þæs wín-geardes hláf-ord : Hwæt dó ic ? ic a-sende mínne leófan sunu ; wénunga<sup>(12)</sup> hine híg for-wandiað<sup>(13)</sup> þonne híg hine ge-seóð.

(1) *Parable* · see p. 73. Spel (II. 1.) *story, tale* ; hence *spell*.

(2) *Plántian* (I. 1.) *to plant*.

(3) *Vine-yard* ; D. wijn-gaard : geard or eard (II. 2.) *yard, (garden), inclosure, dwelling, country*.

(4) *Ge-settan* (I. 2.) *to furnish, people* : perhaps a mis-translation of Vulg. “locavit ;” we read “let it forth.”

(5) *Tilia* (I. 2.) *tiller, husbandman*.

(6) *Tíð* (II. 3.) *time, tide, season* ; G. zeit, D. tijd. *For a long time, many seasons*, Vulg. “multis temporibus.”

(7) *Swingan* (III. 1) *to beat, swinge*.

(8) *I'del* (I.) *empty, idle, vain* ; G. eitel, D. ijdel.

(9) *Teóna* (I. 2.) *injury, wrong*.

(10) *Ge-wæcan* (I. 2.) *to weaken, injure* : wác (G. weich) *weak*.

(11) *Wundian* (I. 1.) *to wound* : wund (II. 2.) *wound*.

(12) *Perhaps* : wénan *to ween, hope, expect* ; G. wännen *to fancy, &c.*

(13) *For-wandian* (I. 1.) *to respect, reverence*.

14. þá hine þa tilian ge-sáwon, híg þóhton be-tweox him, and cwædon: Her is se yrfe-weard<sup>(1)</sup>; cumað, uton hine of-sleán<sup>(2)</sup>, þæt seó æht<sup>(3)</sup> úre sý.

15. And híg hine of þám wín-gearde a-wurpon<sup>(4)</sup> of-slegene. Hwæt déð þæs wín-geardes hláford?

16. He cymð and for-spildð þa tilian, and sylð þone wín-geard óðrum. Híg cwædon þá hig þis ge-hýrdon · þæt ne ge-weorðe.

17. þá be-heóld he híg, and cwæð: Hwæt is þæt a-writen is, þone stán<sup>(5)</sup> þe þa wyrhtan a-wurpon, þes is ge-worden on þære hyrnan<sup>(6)</sup> heáfod<sup>(7)</sup>?

18. Ælc þe fylð ofer þone stán býð for-brytt<sup>(8)</sup>; ofer þone þe he fylð, he to-cwyst<sup>(9)</sup>.

19. þá sóhton þæra sacerdra ealdras<sup>(10)</sup> and þa bóceras<sup>(11)</sup> hyra handa on þære tíde on hine wurpan<sup>(12)</sup>; and híg on-dredon him þæt folc: sóð-lice híg on-geton þæt he þis big-spel tó him cwæð.

(<sup>1</sup>) *Heir*; yrfe (I. 3.) *inheritance* (G. *erb-schaft*) · weard (II. 2.) *keeper, ward-en, &c.*

(<sup>2</sup>) *Sleán* (II. 3.) *to strike, beat, slay*; of-sleán *to kill outright*. of- in composition often strengthens the sense or makes it bad.

(<sup>3</sup>) *Æht* (II. 3.) *possession*; from ágan.

(<sup>4</sup>) *A-weorpan* (III. 1.) *to cast out, reject*.

(<sup>5</sup>) *Comp.* G. *stein*, D. *steen*, S. *stane*.

(<sup>6</sup>) *Hyrne* (I. 3.) *corner*.

(<sup>7</sup>) *Heáfod* (III. 1.) *head*; G. *haupt*, D. *hoofd*.

(<sup>8</sup>) *For-bryttan* (I. 2.) *to break, shatter*: *Vulg.* “conquassabitur.”

(<sup>9</sup>) *To-cwysan* (I. 2.) *to crush, squeeze to pieces*; G. *quetschen*. With *s-squeeze*, *comp.* *bar, s-par*; *melt, s-melt*; *tumble, s-tumble, &c. &c.*

(<sup>10</sup>) *Chief(s of the) priests*.

(<sup>11</sup>) *Bócere* (II. 2.) *book-man, learned man, scribe, lawyer*.

(<sup>12</sup>) *Or weorpan*; see p. 5.

20. þá sendon híg mid searwum<sup>(1)</sup> þa þe híg riht-wíse leton<sup>(2)</sup>, þæt híg hine ge-scyldigodon<sup>(3)</sup>, and þæt híg hine ge-sealdon þám ealdron<sup>(4)</sup> tó dóme<sup>(5)</sup>, and tó þæs déman<sup>(6)</sup> an-wealde<sup>(7)</sup> tó for-démanne<sup>(8)</sup>.

21. þá ácsodon híg hine, and cwædon: Læreow, we witon þæt þú rihte spriest and lærst, and for nánun men ne wandast<sup>(9)</sup>, ac Godes weg on sóð-fæstnisse lærst:

22. Is hit riht þæt man þám Casere<sup>(10)</sup> gafol<sup>(11)</sup> sylle, þe<sup>(12)</sup> ná?

23. þá cwæð he tó him þá he heora fācen<sup>(13)</sup> on-get<sup>(14)</sup>: Hwý fandige<sup>(15)</sup> ge mín?

24. Y'wað<sup>(16)</sup> me áne pening. Hwæs an-lícnesse<sup>(17)</sup>

(1) Searu (III. 1.) *ambush, stratagem*.

(2) *Who might feign themselves righteous men.*

(3) Ge-scyldigan (-ian, see p. 41) (I. 1.) *to accuse*; G. be-schuldigen. Scyld (II. 3.) (G. schuld) *debt, guilt*.

(4) *Deliver him to the chief priests*: Vulg. "traderent illum principatui."

(5) Dóm (II. 2.) *doom, judgment, power, &c.*

(6) Déma (I. 2.) *judge, doomer, deemer*; hence *deemster* (démostre) properly feminine; see p. 66.

(7) An-weald (II. 2.) *power*; G. ge-walt, fem. another exception to the general rule.

(8) Déman (I. 2.) *to judge, for-déman to condemn*: comp. κρινειν, κατα-κρινειν; G. urtheilen, ver-urtheilen.

(9) The for in for-wandian, is the preposition, not the prefix; the latter is inseparable: see p. 73.

(10) Casere (II. 2.) *Cæsar, Emperor*; G. kaiser.

(11) *Tribute, gavel*; F. gabelle.

(12) *Or*; seldom used independently, but often affixed to other conjunctions: see p. 93.

(13) III. 1. *deceit, fraud*.

(14) *For on-geat*; see p. 5.

(15) *Fandian* (I. 1.) *to tempt*.

(16) Y'wian (eówian) (I. 1.) *to show*.

(17) An-lícnes (II. 3.) *likeness, image*.

hæfd he, and ofer-ge-writ<sup>(1)</sup>? þá cwædon hīg: þæs Caseres.

25. þá cwæð he tó him: A-gifað<sup>(2)</sup> þám Casere þa þing þe þæs Caseres synd, and Gode þa þing þe Godes synd.

#### IV.—S. *John* vii. 14—28.

14. þá hit wæs mid-dæg þæs freols-dæges<sup>(3)</sup>, þá eóde se Hælend in-tó þám temple, and lærde.

15. And þa Iudeas wundredon and cwædon: Hú-meta can þes stafas, þonne he ne leornode<sup>(4)</sup>?

16. Se Hælend him and-swarode<sup>(5)</sup> and cwæð: Mín lár nis ná mín, ac þæs þe me sende.

17. Gif hwá<sup>(6)</sup> wile his willan dón, he ge-cnæwd be þære láre hwæðer heó sig of Gode, hwæðer-þe ic be me sylfum spece.

18. Se-þe be him sylfum spicð sécd his ágen wuldor<sup>(7)</sup>; se-þe sécd þæs wuldor þe hine sende, se is sóð-fæst<sup>(8)</sup>, and nis nán un-riht-wísnes on him.

19. Hú ne sealde Moises eów æ, and eówer nán ne healt þá æ? Hwý séce ge me tó of-sleánne?

(<sup>1</sup>) III. 1. *super-scription*.

(<sup>2</sup>) A-gifan (II. 1.) *to render, restore, give back*.

(<sup>3</sup>) Freols (II. 2.) *feast, festival*.

(<sup>4</sup>) Leornian (I. 1.) *to learn*; G. lernen.

(<sup>5</sup>) And-swarian (I. 1.) *to answer, governing the dative*.

(<sup>6</sup>) *If any one*; comp. L. si quis. (<sup>7</sup>) Wuldor (-er) (II. 2.) *glory*.

(<sup>8</sup>) *Sooth-fast, truthful, just*; fæst forms the second part of several compound adjectives.

20. þá and-swarode seó mænio and cwæð: Deófol þe sticað on<sup>(1)</sup>; hwá sécð þe tó of-sleánnne?

21. þá and-swarode se Hælend, and cwæð tó him: án weorc ic worhte, and ealle ge wundriað.

22. For-þý Moises eów sealde ymb-snidennesse<sup>(2)</sup>; (næs<sup>(3)</sup>) ná for-þýg-þe heó of Moises sý, ac of fæderon<sup>(4)</sup>);

23. And on reste-dæge ge ymb-sníðað man þæt Moises æ ne sý to-worpen<sup>(5)</sup>; and ge belgað<sup>(6)</sup> wið me for-þám-þe ic ge-hælde ænne man on reste-dæg.

24. Ne déme ge be an-sýne<sup>(7)</sup>, ac démað rihtne dóm.

25. Sume cwædon, þa þe wæron of Ierusalem: Hú nis þes se þe híg sécað tó of-sleánnne?

26. And nú he spicð open-líce<sup>(8)</sup>, and híg ne cwedað nán þing tó him. Cwede we<sup>(9)</sup> hwæðer þa ealdras on-giton þæt þes is Crist?

27. Ac we witon hwanon þes is: þonne Crist cymð, þonne nāt nán man hwanon he býð.

28. Se Hælend clypode and lærde on þám temple, and cwæð: Me ge cunnon<sup>(10)</sup>, and ge witon hwanon ic

(1) On-stician (I. 1.) *to prick, urge on.*

(2) Ymb-snidennes (II. 3.) *circum-cision*; ymb-sníðan (III. 2.) *to circum-cise*; part. p. -sniden.

(3) Næs (nas) *not*; usually joined with ná.

(4) For fæderum; see p. 12.

(5) To-weorpan (III. 1.) *to over-throw, cast down, destroy*; L. dis-jicere, G. zer-werfen.

(6) Belgan (III. 1.) *to be angry.*

(7) An-sýn (II. 3.) *countenance, appearance.*

(8) Open (II.) *open*; G. offen, D. open.

(9) See pp. 95—6.

(10) Observe the distinction between cunnan and witan (p. 61, note 7); *me ye know, and ye wot whence I am.*

eom : and ic ne com fram me sylfum, ac se is sóð þe me sende, þone ge ne cunnon.

---

V.—*Genesis*, ch. xlv.<sup>(1)</sup>

1. Þá ne mihte Iosep hine leng dyrnan<sup>(2)</sup>, ac he drát calle þa Egiptiscan út, þæt nán fremde<sup>(3)</sup> man be-twyx him nære ;

2. And he weóp, and clypode hlúdre<sup>(4)</sup> stefne, and þa Egiptiscan ge-hýrdon, and eal Pharaones hired<sup>(5)</sup> ;

3. And he cwæð tó his ge-bróðrum : Ic eom Iosep ; lyfað úre fæder nú git ? Þá ne mihton his ge-bróðru him for ege<sup>(6)</sup> ge-and-wyrdan<sup>(7)</sup>.

4. Þá grétte<sup>(8)</sup> he híg ár-wurð-líce<sup>(9)</sup>, and cwæð : Ic eom Iosep eówer bróðor, þe ge sealdon on Egiptaland<sup>(10)</sup>.

5. Ne on-dræde ge eów nán þing, ne eów ne of-pince<sup>(11)</sup> þæt ge me sealdon on þis ríce ; sóð-líce for eówre þearfe me sende God on Egiptaland.

(<sup>1</sup>) This and the following chapter are taken with some alterations from Thwaites's *Heptateuchus*.

(<sup>2</sup>) *To hide* (I. 2.) ; *dyrne* (I.) *dark*.

(<sup>3</sup>) *Fremed, fremd* (I.) *strange, foreign* ; G. *fremd*.

(<sup>4</sup>) *Hlúd* (I.) *loud* ; G. *laut*, D. *luid*.

(<sup>5</sup>) II. 1. *household*.

(<sup>6</sup>) II. 1. *awe, fear*.

(<sup>7</sup>) *And-wyrdan* (I. 2.) *to answer* ; *and-wyrd* (II. 3.) *answer* ; G. *antwort-en*. *Ge-* is used before no other prefixes but *and-* and *ed-*, as should have been stated p. 41, note 2.

(<sup>8</sup>) *Grétan* (I. 2.) *to greet, salute*.

(<sup>9</sup>) *A'r-wurð-líc* (II.) *honorable* ; G. *ehr-würdig*.

(<sup>10</sup>) *Land of the Egyptians* : comp. *Engla-land*, &c. p. 72.

(<sup>11</sup>) (*Hit*) *of-þincð it repenteth* : L. *pænitet* : see p. 86-7.

6. Nú twá gear wæs<sup>(1)</sup> hunger ofer ealle eorðan, and git sceolon<sup>(2)</sup> fífe on þám man ne mæg náðer ne erian<sup>(3)</sup> ne ripan<sup>(4)</sup>.

7. And God me sende tó-þám-þæt ge beón ge-healdene, and þæt ge habbon þæt ge magon big-lybban<sup>(5)</sup>.

8. Þæt næs ná eówres þances<sup>(6)</sup> ac þurh God þe ic þurh his willan<sup>(7)</sup> hider a-send wæs, se dyde me swylce ic Pharaones fæder wære, and his hires hláf-ord, and he sette me tó ealdre ofer Egipta-land.

9. Farað hræd-lice<sup>(8)</sup> tó mínum fæder, and secgað him þæt God me sette tó hláf-orde eallum Egiptum; beódað him þæt he fare tó me,

10. And wunige<sup>(9)</sup> on Gessen-lande<sup>(10)</sup>, and beó me ge-hende, he and his suna, and his bearna bearn, and eówre sceáp, and eówre hryðer-heorda<sup>(11)</sup> and eal þæt ge ágon.

11. And ic eów féde. Git synd fíf hunger-gear bæftan<sup>(12)</sup>: dóð þus þæt ge ne for-wurdon<sup>(13)</sup>.

12. Nú ge ge-seóð hú hit mid me is, and ge ge-hýrað hwæt ic tó eów sprece.

(1) *Has been*: see p. 62, note 2.

(2) *Shall be, are to come.*

(3) *To ear, plough*; L. arare.

(4) I. 2. *to reap.*

(5) See p. 73.

(6) *Of your own accord*: see p. 70. Vulg. has “vestro consilio.”

(7) *Through whose will*: see p. 31.

(8) *Quickly*; = hraðe: see p. 25.

(9) *Wunian to dwell*; G. wohnen.

(10) *Land of Goshen.*

(11) Hryðer (III. 1.) *ox, rother-beast*; G. rind, D. rund: mark the n dropped and the vowel lengthened: see p. 2. Heord (II. 3.), *herd*; G. herde.

(12) *Behind, to come.*

(13) For-weorðan (III. 1.) *to perish*; observe the force of the prefix for-.

12. Cýðað mínum fæder eal mín wuldor, and ealle þa þing þe ge ge-sáwon on Egipta-lande: éfstað and lædað hine tó me.

14. And he clypte<sup>(1)</sup> heora ælcne, and cyste<sup>(2)</sup> híg,

15. And weóp: æfter þison híg ne dorston sprecað wið hine.

16. þá spræc man ofer-eal<sup>(3)</sup>, and wíð-mærsode<sup>(4)</sup> þæt Iosepes bróðru comon tó Pharaone, and Pharao wæs glæd, and eal his hired;

17. And he beád Iosepe þæt he bude his bróðrum and þus cwæde: Sýmað<sup>(5)</sup> eówre assan, and farað tó Chanaan-lande.

18. And nimað þær eówerne fæder, and eówere mægða<sup>(6)</sup>, and cumað tó me, and ic eów sylle ealle Egipta gód.

19. Beód him eác þæt híg nimon wænas<sup>(7)</sup> tó hyra cilda fare<sup>(8)</sup> and tó hyra ge-mæccena<sup>(9)</sup>, and beód him eác þæt híg nimon hyra fæder, and éfston hider swá híg hraðost magon.

20. And ne for-læte ge nán þing<sup>(10)</sup> of eówrum yddisce<sup>(11)</sup>, for-þám ealle Egipta spéda<sup>(12)</sup> beóð eówre.

21. Israeles suna dydon swá him be-boden wæs, and

(1) Clyppan (I. 2.) *to embrace, clip.*

(2) Cyssan (I. 2.) *to kiss*; G. küssen. (3) *Everywhere*; G. über-all.

(4) Wíð-mærsian *to noise, spread abroad*; from wíð and mære.

(5) Sýman (I. 2.) *to load.* (6) Mægð (II. 3.) *family, household, tribe.*

(7) Wægn, wæn (II. 2.) *wagon, wain*; G. wagen.

(8) Far (II. 3.) *going, journey*; hence *fare.*

(9) Ge-mæcca, -e (I. 2, 3.) *husband, wife, companion, mate*; O. *make.*

(10) Vulg. "Nec dimittatis quicquam."

(11) Yddisc *food, from etan*; hence P. *eddis*, ashes, &c. *feed for cattle, after-grass, stubble.*

(12) Spéd *wealth.*

Iosep him sealde wænas eal-swá Pharao him beád, and fôr-mete<sup>(1)</sup>,

22. And sealde hyra ælcum twá scrúd<sup>(2)</sup>; and he sealde Beniamine fíf scrúd, and þreo hundred sylfringa<sup>(3)</sup>.

23. And he sende his fæder tyn assan þe wæron ge-sýmed mid feo, and mid hrægle<sup>(4)</sup>, and mid Egipta welon<sup>(5)</sup>, and tyne þe báron hwæte and hláf.

24. Witod-líce he let þá his ge-bróðru faran, and cwæð tó him : Ne for-læte ge nán þing<sup>(6)</sup> be wege, ac beóð swíðe ge-sóme<sup>(7)</sup>.

25. Híg foron of Egipta-lande, and comon tó Chanaan-lande tó Iacobe hyra fæder,

26. And cwædon tó him : Iosep lyfað þín sunu, and wealt ealles Egipta-landes. Þá Iacob þæt ge-hýrde þá þúhte him swylce he of hefigum slápe a-wacode,

27. And þeáh he him ne ge-lýfde, híg rehton<sup>(8)</sup> him hyra færeld<sup>(9)</sup> be ende-byrdnesse<sup>(10)</sup> and þá he ge-seáh þa wænas, and ealle þa þing þe him ge-sende wæron, his gást weard ge-ed-cwícod<sup>(11)</sup>,

(1) "*Provision for the way*;" fôr (II. 3.) *journey*; mete (II. 2.) *meat*.

(2) Vulg. "*stolas*;" "*changes of raiment*:" scrúd (II. 1.) *garment, shroud*.

(3) Sylfring (II. 2.) "*piece of silver*."

(4) Hrægl (II. 2.) *raiment, garment*; hence *night-rail*.

(5) Wela (I. 2.) *weal, wealth* : pl. *riches, prosperity*.

(6) Perhaps repeated by mistake from v. 5. Vulg. has here "*Ne irascimini*:" we "*see that ye fall not out*."

(7) *Mild, gentle*.

(8) Reccan (II. 2.) *to relate*.

(9) *Going, journey, or perhaps, how they had fared*.

(10) *In order, succession* : Vulg. "*Illi econtra referebant omnem ordinem rei*."

(11) Ge-ed-cwícian *to make alive again, quicken*, cwic, cuc, &c. *quick, living*.

28. And he cwæð: Ge-noh ic hæbbe gif Iosep mín sunu gyt leofað; ic fare and ge-seó hine ær-þám-þe ic swelte<sup>(1)</sup>.

---

VI.—*Exodus*, ch. xxiii.<sup>(2)</sup>

1. Ne under-fóh<sup>(3)</sup> leáse<sup>(4)</sup> ge-witnesse<sup>(5)</sup>.

2. Ne fylig<sup>(6)</sup> þú þám folce þe yfel wille dón, ne be-foran manegon sóðes ne wanda<sup>(7)</sup>.

3. Ne miltsa<sup>(8)</sup> þú þearfan<sup>(9)</sup> on dóme.

4. Gif þú ge-méte þínes feónðes oxan oððe assan, læd hine tó him.

5. Gif þú ge-seó his assan licgan under byrðene<sup>(10)</sup>, ne gá þú þanon, ac hefe hine úp mid him.

6. Ne þú ne wanda on þearfan dóme.

7. Fleóh<sup>(11)</sup> leásunga<sup>(12)</sup>; un-scyldigne and riht-wísne ne of-sléh þú.

(<sup>1</sup>) Sweltan (III. 1.) *to die*.

(<sup>2</sup>) This chapter is imperfect in several places, and the 30th verse is wanting.

(<sup>3</sup>) Under-fangan, -fón (II. 2.) *to undertake, receive*.

(<sup>4</sup>) Leás (I.) *false, lying*. (<sup>5</sup>) Witness, testimony. (<sup>6</sup>) See p. 42.

(<sup>7</sup>) Wandian *to fear*, &c. : *shrink not, decline not from the truth through fear*. (<sup>8</sup>) Miltsian *to pity*; from milde. (<sup>9</sup>) Þearf (I.) *poor*.

(<sup>10</sup>) Byrðen (II. 3.) *burthen*; G. *bürde*: from *beran*.

(<sup>11</sup>) Fleógan, fleón (II. 2.) *to flee, fly*; G. *fliehen, fliegen*.

(<sup>12</sup>) Either sing, or plur. Nouns in -ung sometimes form the oblique cases singular in -a. Leásung *leasing, lying*, from leás.

8. Ne nim þú lác<sup>(1)</sup> þa a-blendað gleáwne<sup>(2)</sup>, and a-wendað<sup>(3)</sup> riht-wísra word.

9. Ne beó þú æl-þeódigum<sup>(4)</sup> gram<sup>(5)</sup>, for-þám ge wæron æl-þeódie on Egipta-lande.

10. Sáw<sup>(6)</sup> six ger<sup>(7)</sup> þín land, and gadera<sup>(8)</sup> his wæstmas,

11. And læt hit restan on þám seofodan, þæt þearfan eton þær-of, and wild-deór<sup>(9)</sup> : dó swá on þínum wínearde, and on þínum ele-beámon<sup>(10)</sup>.

12. Wyrc six dagas, and ge-swíc<sup>(11)</sup> on þám seofodan, þæt þín oxa and þín assa híg ge-reston, and þæt þínre wylne sunu sý ge-hyrt<sup>(12)</sup>, and se útan-cumena<sup>(13)</sup>.

13. Healdað ealle þa þing þe ic eów sæde, and ne swerie ge þurh útan-cumenra goda naman.

14. Þrywa on gere ge-wurðiað<sup>(14)</sup> mínne freols.

15. Þú ytst þeorf-symbel<sup>(15)</sup>; seofon dagas ge etað

(1) *Gifts*, here neuter II. 1., but see p. 9.

(2) *Gleáw* (I.) *skilful, clever*; G. *klug*.

(3) *A-wendan* (I. 2.) *to turn away, sub-vert, per-vert*; G. *ab-wenden*: the prefix *a-* sometimes has the force of *of-*.

(4) *Æl-þeódig* (II.) *foreign, strange*; *æl-* is here=*άλλ-ος*, L. *al-ius*, *alienus*; and not to be confounded with *æl* for *eal*, in *æl-mihtig*, *æl-beorht* and the like.

(5) *Angry, cruel*. Vulg. "*molestus*."

(6) *Sáwan* (II. 2.) *to sow*; G. *sähen*.

(7) =*gear*, see p. 5.

(8) *Gaderian* *to gather*.

(9) *Wild beasts*.

(10) *Olive-trees*; *ele* *oil*, *beám* *beam, tree*; G. *baum*, D. *boom*, whence *boom*.

(11) *Ge-swícan* (III. 2.) *to cease*.

(12) *Ge-hyrtan* (I. 2.) *to encourage, hearten, strengthen*, from *heorte*.

(13) *Stranger, one come from without*; *út-on*, see p. 71.

(14) *Ge-weorðian* (*wurðian*) *to honour, exaltate*; G. *würdigen*.

(15) *Feast of unleavened bread*.

þeorf, swá ic þe be-beád, on þæs monðes tíð níwra<sup>(1)</sup> wæstma, þá þú út-fóre of Egipta-lande : ne cymst þú bútan ælmyssan<sup>(2)</sup> on míne ge-sýhðe.

16. Heald þá symbel-tíde þæs monðes frum-sceat-ta<sup>(3)</sup> þínes weorces þe þú on lande sáwst, and on geres út-gange<sup>(4)</sup>, þonne þú ge-gaderast þíne wæstmas tó-gædre.

17. Þrywa on gere æle wæpned-man<sup>(5)</sup> æt-ýwð<sup>(6)</sup> be-foran Dryhtne<sup>(7)</sup>.

18. Ne offra þú þínre on-sægdnesse blód<sup>(8)</sup> úppan beorman<sup>(9)</sup>, ne se rysel<sup>(10)</sup> ne be-lýfð<sup>(11)</sup> oð morgen<sup>(12)</sup>.

19. Bring þíne frum-sceattas tó Godes húse.

20. Nú ic sende mínne engel þæt he þe læde in-tó þære stówe þe ic ge-gearwode<sup>(13)</sup>.

21. Gým<sup>(14)</sup> his, and ge-hýr his stemne<sup>(15)</sup>, for-þám

(1) Níwe (I.) *new*; νεος, L. novus, G. neu, D. nieuw.

(2) Ælmyss (1. 3.) *alms*; (S. awmous;) *gift* would here have been better.

(3) *First fruits*; fruma *beginning*, sceat (II. 2.) *coin, value, profit, &c.* hence *shot, scot*: G. schatz *treasure*.

(4) Ut-gang (II. 2.) *out-going, end*; G. aus-gang.

(5) Lit. *weaponed-man*; the common use of this word for *male* is a strong proof of the warlike habits of our A. S. forefathers.

(6) Æt-ýwan (-ian, -eówian) (I. 2.) *to appear, show, &c.*

(7) Dryhten (II. 2.) *Lord, chief*; dryht (II. 3.) *troop, band*.

(8) Blód (II. 1.) *blood*; G. blut, D. blood.

(9) Beorme (I. 3.) *barm, leaven, leavened bread*. (10) II. 2. *fat*.

(11) Be-lýfan (III. 2.) *to remain*; G. b-leiben, D. b-lijven.

(12) Morgen, mergen, merigen (II. 2.) *morn, morrow*; G. and D. morgen.

(13) Gearwian *to prepare, make yare or ready*.

(14) Gým (I. 2.) *to take care of, care for, herd, attend to*.

(15) Stemn = stefn *voice*; G. stimme, D. stem.

he ne for-gifð þonne ge syngiað, and mín nama is on him.

22. Ic beó þínra feónða feónd,

23. And þe in ge-læde tó Amorrea lande.

24. Ne ge-eað-méd<sup>(1)</sup> þú hira godas, ac to-brec hira an-lícnessa.

25. þeówiað Dryhtne : ic ge-bletsie eów, and dó ælce un-trumnesse fram eów,

26. And ge-íce<sup>(2)</sup> eówer dagas,

27. And a-flýme<sup>(3)</sup> þíne fýnd be-foran þe ;

28. And ic a-sende hyrnetta<sup>(4)</sup>, þe aflýmað Efeum<sup>(5)</sup> and Chananeum,

29. Twelf monðum ær þú in-fare.

\* \* \* \* \*

31. Ic sette þíne ge-mæro<sup>(6)</sup> fram þære Reádan<sup>(7)</sup> Sæ oð Palastinas Sæ, and fram þám wéstene oð þæt flód.

32. Nafa þú náne sibbe<sup>(8)</sup> wið hira godas,

33. þý-læs híg þe be-swícon<sup>(9)</sup>.

(<sup>1</sup>) Eáð-médan (eád-) (I. 2.) *to humble one-self, worship, "bow down to :"* from eáð and mód.

(<sup>2</sup>) Ge-ícan (I. 2.) *to increase, lengthen, eke out ;* from eác.

(<sup>3</sup>) A-flýman (I. 2.) *to put to flight, from fleám flight.*

(<sup>4</sup>) Hyrnet hornet.

(<sup>5</sup>) *The Hivite ;* Vulg. "Hevæum."

(<sup>6</sup>) Ge-mære (III. 1.) *boundary ;* P. *meer.*

(<sup>7</sup>) Reád (I.) *red ;* G. roth, D. rood.

(<sup>8</sup>) Sib (II. 3.) *peace.*

(<sup>9</sup>) Be-swícan (III. 2.) *to deceive.*

VII.—*Saxon Chronicle* <sup>(1)</sup>.

\* \* \* The Saxon Chronicle is a series of annals of A. S. affairs, from the earliest times to A.D. 1154, compiled by Monks.

Brytene <sup>(2)</sup> ig-land <sup>(3)</sup> is eahta hund mila lang and twá hund mila brád; and her syndon on þám ig-lande fíf ge-þeóda <sup>(4)</sup>, Englisc, and Bryt-Wylisc <sup>(5)</sup>, and Scyttisc <sup>(6)</sup>, and Pyhtisc <sup>(7)</sup>, and Bóc-leden <sup>(8)</sup>. Æ'rost wæron búgend <sup>(9)</sup> þisses landes Bryttas <sup>(10)</sup> þa comon of Armo-rica <sup>(11)</sup>, and ge-sæton <sup>(12)</sup> súðan-weard Brytene ærost.

A.D. 449. Her <sup>(13)</sup> Martianus and Valentinianus on-fengon rice <sup>(14)</sup>, and ricsodon seofon winter. On heora dagum Hengest <sup>(15)</sup> and Horsa fram Wyrhtgeorne <sup>(16)</sup> ge-laðode <sup>(17)</sup> Brytta cyninge tó fultume, ge-sóhton <sup>(18)</sup> Brytene on þám stede <sup>(19)</sup> þe is ge-nemned Yp-wines-fleót <sup>(20)</sup>, ærost Bryttum tó fultume, ac hí eft <sup>(21)</sup> on hí <sup>(22)</sup>

(1) Taken with some slight changes from the edition of Dr. Ingram, President of Trinity College, Oxford.

(2) II. 2. *Britain*.

(3) Ig-land, ea-land, (II. 1.) e, *iland*; G. ei-land, D. ey-land: *island* has arisen from a confusion with *isle*, (L. *insula*, G. *insel*, F. *isle*, *île*) with which it has no connexion.

(4) Ge-þeód (II. 3.) *nation*.

(5) Lit. *British-Welsh*.

(6) *Scottish*.

(7) *Pictish*.

(8) *Book-Latin, Roman*.

(9) For búend (II. 2.) *inhabitants*: see p. 15.

(10) Brytte (II. 2.) *Briton*.

(11) A various reading has *Armenia*.

(12) Ge-sittan (II. 1.) *to occupy, settle in*.

(13) Here and below means *this year*.

(14) *The Roman Empire*.

(15) II. 2. Not *Hengist* as commonly spelt; *horse*, G. *hengst*. Horsa too meant the same.

(16) *Vortigern*.

(17) Laðian (I. 1.) *to invite*, G. *laden*.

(18) Sécan is here *to go to*; comp. the use of L. *petere*.

(19) II. 2. *Place, stead*; G. *statt, stätte*.

(20) *Ebb's-et* in the Isle of Thanet; *fleót stream, creek*; *fleet* is common in locname.asl

(21) *Again, afterwards*.

(22) *Against them*; in eo

fuhton. Se cing hét hí feohtan on-gean Pyhtas, and hí swá dydon, and sige<sup>(1)</sup> hæfdon swá-hwar-swá hí comon. Hí þá sendon tó Angle<sup>(2)</sup> and héton heom sendan máre fultum, and heom secgan Bryt-Walena<sup>(3)</sup> náhtnesse<sup>(4)</sup>, and þæs landes cysta<sup>(5)</sup>. Hí þá sendon heom máre fultum: þá comon þa men of þrym mægðum Germanie<sup>(6)</sup>:—of Eald-Seaxum<sup>(7)</sup>, of Englum<sup>(8)</sup>, of Iótum<sup>(9)</sup>. Of Iótum comon Cant-ware<sup>(10)</sup>, and Wiht-ware, þæt is seó mæð<sup>(11)</sup> þe nú eardað<sup>(12)</sup> on Wiht<sup>(13)</sup>, and þæt cyn on West-Seaxum<sup>(14)</sup> þe man gít háet Iótena-cyn. Of Eald-Seaxum comon Eást-Seaxan<sup>(15)</sup>, and Súd-Seaxan<sup>(16)</sup>, and West-Seaxan. Of

(1) II. 2. *victory*; G. *sieg*.

(2) Engle, Angle (Ongle) (II. 2.) *country of the Angles*, the present Sleswig.

(3) Bryt-Wala (I. 2.) lit. *British-Welshman*: the Anglo-Saxons called all not of Gothic race Walan or Wealas, equivalent to *strangers* or *foreigners*, and the Germans still keep up the same idea, calling the French and Italians *Wülschen*, and anything strange or outlandish *wülsch*.

(4) Náhtnes (II. 3.) *goodness for nought, cowardice*.

(5) Cyst (II. 3.) *choice, excellence*; pl. *cysta good things, abundance*.

(6) Gen. of Germania; see p. 13.

(7) Seaxa (I. 2.) *Saxon*: the Old-Saxon dialect nearly resembled the A. S.

(8) See p. 19.

(9) Ióta, Iúta (I. 2); the Jutes occupied the present Jutland, which was bounded to the south by Angle; the Old-Saxons' land, now Holstein, lay still further southward.

(10) *Dwellers in Kent*: see p. 20.

(11) = mægð, p. 5.

(12) *Eardian to dwell*, from eard.

(13) Or Wiht-land *Isle of Wight*.

(14) The West-Saxons occupied Berks, Hants, Wilts, Dorset, and parts of Somerset and Devon.

(15) The East-Saxons occupied Essex, as the name implies, Middlesex, and part of Herts.

(16) The South-Saxons had Sussex, named after them, and Surrey.

Angle comon (se á síð-þán stód wéstig<sup>(1)</sup> be-twyx lótum and Seaxum) Eást-Engle<sup>(2)</sup>, Middel-Engle<sup>(3)</sup>, Mearce<sup>(4)</sup>, and ealle Nord-Ymbra<sup>(5)</sup>. \* \* \*

A.D. 596. Her Gregorius Papa sende tó Brytene Augustinum, mid wel monegum<sup>(6)</sup> munucum<sup>(7)</sup> þa Godes word sceoldon bodian<sup>(8)</sup> Angel-cynne. \* \*

A.D. 806. Her se mona a-þýstrode<sup>(9)</sup> on kalendis Septembris<sup>(10)</sup>. Eád-wulf Nordan-Hymbra cyning wæs of his ríce a-drifen, and Heard-byrht bisceop on Hagustealdes-e<sup>(11)</sup> forð-ferde<sup>(12)</sup>. Eác on þissum ylcan geare pridie nonas Iunii<sup>(13)</sup> róde-tácen<sup>(14)</sup> weard at-eówed<sup>(15)</sup> on þám monan, ánes Wódnes-dæges<sup>(16)</sup>,

(<sup>1</sup>) *Waste, desert.*

(<sup>2</sup>) East Anglia comprised Norfolk, Suffolk, and Cambridge.

(<sup>3</sup>) The Middle Angles had Salop, Worcester, Warwick, Gloucester, &c.

(<sup>4</sup>) Mercia included the remaining midland counties, together with Chester, Derby, Nottingham, and Lincoln.

(<sup>5</sup>) Northumbria consisted of York, Lancaster, and the other northern counties: as these were united or divided into two kingdoms, Saxon England formed either a heptarchy or an octarchy.

(<sup>6</sup>) *Very many, a good number.*

(<sup>7</sup>) Munuc (II. 2.) *monk*; G. *mönch*, L. *monachus*.

(<sup>8</sup>) *To announce, proclaim, preach*; hence *to bode*: *boda messenger*; G. *bote*, D. *boode*.

(<sup>9</sup>) A-þýstrián *to become dark, be eclipsed*, from þýstru (p. 10.); þýster *dark*; G. *düster*.

(<sup>10</sup>) *Sept. 1.*: the Roman name for the day of the month was used sometimes, but not always: see p. 36. (<sup>11</sup>) *Hexham.*

(<sup>12</sup>) *Went forth, departed, died.*

(<sup>13</sup>) *June 4.*

(<sup>14</sup>) *Sign of the Cross*; *ród* (II. 3.) *rood, Cross*; *tácen token, sign*; G. *zeichen*, D. *teeken*.

(<sup>15</sup>) *At-* for *æt-*; see p. 4.

(<sup>16</sup>) "*Of a Wednesday*," as we still say.

innan þære dagine<sup>(1)</sup>; and eft on þissum geare tertio kalendas Septembris<sup>(2)</sup> án wundor-líc trendel<sup>(3)</sup> weard at-eowed a-bútan þære sunnan. \* \*

And þý ylcan geare (A.D. 853.) sende Æðel-wulf cyning Ælf-red his sunu tó Rome, (þá wæs þonne Leo<sup>(4)</sup> Papa on Rome) and he hine tó cyninge gehálgode, and hine him tó bisceop-suna ge-nam<sup>(5)</sup>. \*

A.D. 871. þá feng Ælf-red Æðel-wulf-ing<sup>(6)</sup> tó<sup>(7)</sup> West-Seaxna ríce; and þæs ymb éenne monað<sup>(8)</sup> gefeagt Ælf-red cyning wið ealne þone here<sup>(9)</sup> lytle werode<sup>(10)</sup> æt Wil-túne<sup>(11)</sup> and hine lange on dæg geflymde<sup>(12)</sup>, and þa Deniscan áhton wæl-stówe<sup>(13)</sup> ge-weald. And þæs geares wurdon nigon folc-gefeoht<sup>(14)</sup> ge-fohten wið þone here on þám cyne-ríce be súðan Temese, bútan þám þe him Ælf-red, and ealdor-men<sup>(15)</sup>, and cyninges þegnas oft ráda<sup>(16)</sup> on-ridon þe man ná ne rímde<sup>(17)</sup>. And þæs geares

(<sup>1</sup>) Daging (see p. 67.) *dawn*; dagian to dawn, O. daw.

(<sup>2</sup>) Aug. 29.

(<sup>3</sup>) Round, circle: hence to trundle.

(<sup>4</sup>) Leo IV.

(<sup>5</sup>) Stood sponsor to him at Confirmation; an ancient custom of the Churches; see the 3rd rubric after Confirmation, and thereon Wheatley, &c.

(<sup>6</sup>) Son of Æthelwulf; see p. 65.

(<sup>7</sup>) Feng tó "took to," as is still said.

(<sup>8</sup>) One month after that.

(<sup>9</sup>) The Danish host of plunderers was called emphatically "se here" the army; G. das heer: see p. 9.

(<sup>10</sup>) Abl. with a little band: werod II. 1.

(<sup>11</sup>) Wil-tún Wilton.

(<sup>12</sup>) Ge-flyman = a-flyman above.

(<sup>13</sup>) Wæl-stów slaughter-place, battle-field; G. wahl-platz.

(<sup>14</sup>) Great battles, battles of nations.

(<sup>15</sup>) Ealdor-man (III. 2.) senator, chief; hence alderman.

(<sup>16</sup>) Rád (II. 3.) road, in-road, raid, foray; from rídan.

(<sup>17</sup>) Ríman to count, number: hence to rime; G. reimen, D. rijmen.

wæron of-slegene nigon eorlas <sup>(1)</sup>, and án cyning; and þý geare namon West-seaxan frið <sup>(2)</sup> wið þone here.

A.D. 901. Her forð-ferde Ælf-red Ædel-wulfing six nihtum <sup>(3)</sup> ær Ealra Háligras Mæssan <sup>(4)</sup>, se wæs cyning ofer eal Angel-cyn bútan þám dæle þe under Dena on-wealde wæs. And he heóld þæt ríce óðer-healf <sup>(5)</sup> gear læs þe þryttig wintra <sup>(6)</sup>.

### VIII.—*Apollonius.* <sup>(7)</sup>

\* \* Translated from the *Gesta Romanorum*, a monkish collection of tales, by whom is not known. This story is the original of the play called “*Pericles Prince of Tyre.*”

Sóð-líce mid-þý-þe þæs cynges dóhtor ge-seáh þæt Apollonius on eallum góðum cræftum swá wel wæs ge-togen <sup>(8)</sup>, þá ge-feoll hyre mód on his lufe. þá æfter þæs beórscipes <sup>(9)</sup> ge-endunge, cwæð þæt

<sup>(1)</sup> Eorl *earl*.

<sup>(2)</sup> Namon frið *made peace* : frið (II. 2.) *peace* ; G. friede.

<sup>(3)</sup> The Anglo-Saxons reckoned time by *nights* : of this our *se'n-night* (seven-night) and *fo'rt'night* (fourteen-night) are relics.

<sup>(4)</sup> *All Hallows' Mass, Feast of All Saints* : mæsse I. 3.

<sup>(5)</sup> See p. 36.

<sup>(6)</sup> See p. 35, note 5.

<sup>(7)</sup> From Mr. Thorpe's edition, pp. 17—19, 23—25.

<sup>(8)</sup> Teógan, (túgan), teón *to draw &c., educate* : comp. G. er-ziehen ; L. e-ducare from ducere.

<sup>(9)</sup> Beór-scipe (II. 2.) *feast, banquet* ; beór (II. 1.) *beer*.

mæden tó þám cyngre: Leófa fæder, þú lýfdest me lytle ær þæt ic móste gifan Apollonio swá-hwæt-swá ic wolde of þínum gold-horde<sup>(1)</sup>. Arces-trates se cyng cwæð tó hyre: Gif him swá-hwæt-swá þú wile. Heó þá swiðe<sup>(2)</sup> blíðe<sup>(3)</sup> út-eóde and cwæð: Láreow Apolloni, ic gife þe be mínes fæder leáfe twá hund punda<sup>(4)</sup> goldes, and feower hund punda ge-wihte<sup>(5)</sup> seolfres, and þone mæstan dæl<sup>(6)</sup> deór-wyrðan<sup>(7)</sup> reáfes, and twentig þeówa manna. And heó þá þus cwæð tó þám þeówum mannum: Berað þás þing mid eow þe ic be-hét<sup>(8)</sup> Apollonio mínum láreowe, and lecgað innon búre<sup>(9)</sup> be-foran mínum freóndum. Þis weard þá þus ge-dón æfter þære cwene<sup>(10)</sup> háse<sup>(11)</sup>, and ealle þa men hyre gife heredon þe híg ge-sáwon. Þá sóð líce ge-endode se ge-beórscipe, and þa men ealle a-rison, and grétton þone cyng and þá cwene, and bædon híg ge-sunde<sup>(12)</sup> beón and hám ge-wendon. Eác-swylce<sup>(13)</sup> Apollonius

(1) Hord (II. 2.) *hoard, treasure.*

(2) Swið (I.) *strong, powerful*; swiðe *greatly, very*; comp. L. (*valide*) valde, F. fort.

(3) Blíðe *blithe*; D. blijde.

(4) Pund (II. 1.) *pound.*

(5) Ge-wiht (II. 3.) *weight*; G. ge-wicht.

(6) *A very great deal.*

(7) *Precious*; deór *dear*; G. theuer, D. duur.

(8) Be-hátan (II. 2.) *to promise*; G. ver-heissen.

(9) Búr (II. 2.) *chamber, bower.*

(10) Cwen (II. 3.) *queen*; quean is likewise from cwen, which meant originally *woman*; γυνή.

(11) Hás (II. 3.) *command, be-hest*; G. ge-heiss.

(12) Ge-sund *sound, whole*; bade them *fare-well*; L. valere eos jusserunt.

(13) *So in like manner.*

cwæð: þú góða cyning and earmra ge-miltsigend, and þú cwen lare lufigend, beó ge ge-sunde. He be-seáh<sup>(1)</sup> eác tó þám þeówum mannum þe þæt mæden him for-gifen<sup>(2)</sup> hæfde, and heom cwæð tó: Nimað þás þing mid eów þe me seó cwen for-geaf, and gán we sécan úre gæst-hús<sup>(3)</sup> þæt we magon ús ge-restan.

þá a-dred þæt mæden þæt heó næfre eft Apollonium ne ge-sáwe swá hraðe swá heó wolde, and eóde þá tó hyre fæder and cwæð: þú góða cyning, lícað þe wel þæt Apollonius þe þurh ús tó-dæg ge-góðod<sup>(4)</sup> is, þus heonon fare, and cuman yfele men and be-reáfian hine? Se cyng cwæð: Wel þú cwæde: hát him findan hwar he hine mæge wurd lícost<sup>(5)</sup> ge-restan. þá dyde þæt mæden swá hyre be-boden wæs, and Apollonius on-feng þære wununge<sup>(6)</sup> þe him be-táht<sup>(7)</sup> wæs, and þar-in-eóde, Gode þancigende þe him ne for-wyrnde cyne-lices wurdscipes and frófre.

Ac þæt mæden hæfde un-stille niht mid þære lufe on-áled<sup>(8)</sup> þára worda and sanga þe heó ge-hýrde æt Apollonige<sup>(9)</sup>, and ná leng heó ne ge-bád þonne hit dæg was, ac eóde sona swá hit leóht<sup>(10)</sup> wæs, and

(<sup>1</sup>) Be-seón (III.3.) *to look, look at.*

(<sup>2</sup>) For-gifan (II. 1.) *to give away, present, forgive.*

(<sup>3</sup>) Inn; *guest-house*; G. *gast-haus.*

(<sup>4</sup>) Ge-góðian, *to endow, enrich*; G. *be-gütern.*

(<sup>5</sup>) Wurð-líc (II.) *honourable.* (<sup>6</sup>) Dwelling, *habitation*; G. *wohnung.*

(<sup>7</sup>) Be-tæcan (I.2.) *to commit, assign*; hence *betake.*

(<sup>8</sup>) On-álan (I.2.) *to inflame.*

(<sup>9</sup>) Abl. or dat. formed A. S.-wise from Apollonius; the g inserted as p. 41.

(<sup>10</sup>) Light; G. *licht.*

ge-sæt be-foran hyre fæder bedde. þá cwæð se cyng :  
 Leófe dóhtor, for-hwý eart þú þus ár-wacol<sup>(1)</sup>? þæt  
 mæden cwæð: Me a-wehton<sup>(2)</sup> þa ge-cneordnessa<sup>(3)</sup>  
 þe ic girstan-dæg<sup>(4)</sup> ge-hýrde; nú bidde ic þe for-  
 þám þæt þú be-fæste<sup>(5)</sup> me úrum cuman Apollonige  
 tó láre<sup>(6)</sup>. þá weard se cyng þearle<sup>(7)</sup> ge-blissod<sup>(8)</sup>,  
 and hét feccan Apollonium and him tó cwæð: Mín  
 dóhtor gyrnd þæt heó móte leornian æt þe þa ge-  
 sáligan<sup>(9)</sup> láre þe þú canst, and gif þú wilt þisum  
 oingum ge-hýrsum beón, ic swerige þe þurh mínes  
 áces mæгна<sup>(10)</sup> þæt swá-hwæt-swá þú on sáe for-lure,  
 ic þe þæt on land ge-staðelige<sup>(11)</sup>. þá-þá Apollonius  
 þæt ge-hýrde, he on-feng þám mædenne tó láre, and  
 hyre tæhte swá wel swá he sylf ge-leornode.

\*

\*

\*

\*

\*

þá wæs hyre ge-cýd þe þar ealdor<sup>(12)</sup> wæs, þæt þar  
 wære cumen sum cyngc<sup>(13)</sup> mid his ađume<sup>(14)</sup>, and  
 mid his dóhtor, mid miclum gifum. Mid-þám-þe heó

(1) *Early-wakeful*; comp. L. vigil.

(2) A-weccan (I. 2.) *to awake* (act.) G. er-wecken: the neut. is wacian  
 (I. 1.) or wacan (II. 3.); G. wachen. (3) *Studies, accomplishments.*

(4) *Yesterday*; G. gestern; comp. L. hestern-us.

(5) Be-fæstan (I. 2.) *to commit, intrust.*

(6) *For instruction.*

(7) Pearl (I.) *strong*; þearle *very, greatly*; comp. swíðe above.

(8) Blissian *to rejoice*; bliss (II. 3.) *bliss, joy.*

(9) Ge-sálig (I.) *happy, blessed*; G. selig: hence silly, O. sely.

(10) Mægen (III. 1.) *power.*

(11) Ge-staðelian *to establish, make good*, from staðol *station*; whence  
 staðol-fæst *stead-fast*, &c.

(12) Here used for *chief priestess.*

(13) See p. 5.

(14) Ađum *son-in-law.*

þæt ge-hýrde, heó hí sylfe mid cyne-lícum reáfe ge frætwoðe<sup>(1)</sup>, and mid purpran ge-scrýdde, and hyre heáfod mid golde and mid gimmon<sup>(2)</sup> ge-glengde<sup>(3)</sup>, and mid miclum fæmnena<sup>(4)</sup> heápe<sup>(5)</sup> ymb-trymm-ed<sup>(6)</sup>, com tó-geanes þám cynge<sup>(7)</sup>. Heó wæs sóðlice þearle wlitig<sup>(8)</sup>, and for þære<sup>(9)</sup> miclan lufe þære cláennesse hí sædon ealle þæt þar nære nán Dianan<sup>(10)</sup> swá ge-cweme<sup>(11)</sup> swá heó.

Mid-þám-þe Apollonius þæt ge-seáh, he mid his aðume, and mid his dóhtor tó hyre urnon, and feollon ealle tó hyre fótum, and wéndon þæt heó Diana wære seó gyden<sup>(12)</sup> for hyre miclan beorhtnesse and wlite. Þæt háli<sup>(13)</sup> ern<sup>(14)</sup> weardþ þá ge-openod, and þa lác wæron in-ge-bróhte; and Apollonius on-gan þa spreca and cweðan: Ic fram cild-háde wæs Apollonius ge-nemned, on Tirum ge-boren. Mid-þám-þe

(1) Ge-frætwan to adorn; frætu (III. 1.) ornament, fret.

(2) Gim (II. 2.) gem.

(3) Ge-glengan (I. 2.) to adorn.

(4) Fæmne damsel; L. femina.

(5) Heáp (II. 2.) troop, heap; G. haufe, D. hoop.

(6) Ymb-trymmian to surround, trymmian to strengthen, hence to trim, guard, a garment, &c.

(7) To meet the king; comp. G. dem könige ent-gegen.

(8) Beautiful; wlite (II. 2.) beauty.

(9) = þære; at p 5, l. 1, it should have been stated that æ is sometimes changed to á, as well á to æ.

(10) Dat. of Diana.

(11) Pleasing, agreeable, from cwuman (cuman) to come; comp. G. be-quem con-venient.

(12) Feminine of god; see p. 66, and comp. G. gott, gött-in.

(13) = hálig, see p. 5.

(14) Ern, ærn (II. 1) house, room; see p. 71, n. 7.

ic be-com tó fullon and-gite<sup>(1)</sup> þá næs nán cræft þe wære fram cyngum be-gán<sup>(2)</sup> oððe fram æðelum mannum þæt ic ne cúðe: ic a-rædde<sup>(3)</sup> Antiochus rædels<sup>(4)</sup> þæs cynges tó-þón-þæt ic his dóhtor underfenge me tó ge-mæccan, ac he sylfa wæs mid þám fúlestan horwe<sup>(5)</sup> þar-tó ge-þeód<sup>(6)</sup>, and me þá syrwoðe<sup>(7)</sup> tó of-sleánne. Mid-þám-þe ic þæt forfleáh<sup>(8)</sup>, þá weard ic on sáe for-liden<sup>(9)</sup>, and com tó Cyrenense<sup>(10)</sup>. þá underfenge me Arcestrates se eyngc mid swá micelre lufe, þæt ic æt nyhstan<sup>(11)</sup> ge-earnode<sup>(12)</sup> þæt he geaf me his á-cennedan<sup>(13)</sup> dóhtor tó ge-mæccan. Seó fór þá mid me tó onfónne mínon cyne-ríce, and þás míne dóhtor þe ic be-foran þe, Diana, ge-and-weard<sup>(14)</sup> hæbbe, a-cende on sáe, and hyre gást-a-let<sup>(15)</sup>. Ic þá hí mid cyne-lícum réafe ge-scrýdde, and mid golde and ge-write<sup>(16)</sup> on ciste<sup>(17)</sup> a-legde<sup>(18)</sup>, þæt se-þe hí funde hí wurd-lice

(1) And-git (II. 1.) *understanding*.

(2) Be-gán to *exercise, cultivate, attend to*.

(3) A-rædan to *read, guess*; G. er-rathen to *guess*.

(4) II 2. *riddle*; G. räthsel.

(5) Horu (III. 1.) *pollution*.

(6) Ge-þeóðan (I. 2.) to *join*.

(7) Syrwian to *plot*; searu (III. 1.) *ambush, stratagem*.

(8) For-fleón to *escape, flee from*.

(9) Shipwrecked; líðan (III. 2.) to *sail*, for-líðan to *sail with ill success, suffer shipwreck*.

(10) Cyrene.

(11) At last.

(12) Earned, deserved, obtained.

(13) A'-cenned = án-cenned *only begotten*.

(14) Present.

(15) A-lætan = of-lætan to *let forth, give up*.

(16) Ge-writ (III. 1.) *writing, writ, inscription*.

(17) Cist (II. 3.) *chest, coffin*; P. kist, G. kiste.

(18) Usually -lede; from -legan.

be-byrigde<sup>(1)</sup>, and þás míne dóhtor be-fæste þám mán-  
fullestan<sup>(2)</sup> mannan to féðanne<sup>(3)</sup>. Fór me<sup>(4)</sup> þá, to  
Egipta-lande feower-tyne gear on heófe<sup>(5)</sup>: þá ic on-  
gean<sup>(6)</sup> com, þá sædon hí me þæt mín dóhtor wære  
forð-faren<sup>(7)</sup>; and me wæs mín sár<sup>(8)</sup> eal ge-ed-níwad.

Mid-þám-þe he þás þingc eal a-reht hæfde, Arces-  
trate sóð-líce his wíf úp-a-rás, and hine ymb-clypte<sup>(9)</sup>.  
þá niste ná Apollonius ne ne ge-lýfde þæt heó his  
ge-mæcca<sup>(10)</sup> wære, ac sceáf<sup>(11)</sup> hí fram him. Heó  
þá micelre stefne clypode, and cwæð mid wópe: Ic  
eom Arcestrate þín ge-mæcca, Arcestrates dóhtor þæs  
cynges, and þú eart Apollonius mín láreow þe me  
lárdest! þú eart se for-lidena man þe ic lufode, ná  
for gálnesse<sup>(12)</sup> ac for wís-dóme! Hwar is mín dóhtor?  
He be-wende hine þá to Thasian<sup>(13)</sup> and cwæð:  
þis heó is; and híg weópon þá ealle, and eác blis-  
sodon. And þæt word sprang geond eal þæt land  
þæt Apollonius se mæra cyngc hæfde funden his  
wíf; and þá weard or-mæte<sup>(14)</sup> bliss, and þa or-

(1) (Be-) byrigan to bury.

(2) Mán-full *wicked*; mán (II. 1.) *wickedness, sin, crime*; mán-swara  
a *man-sworn, perjured man*; G. mein-eid, *false oath*.

(3) To feed, nourish, bring up.

(4) See p. 81.

(5) Heáf, heóf (II. 2.) *sigh, groan, grief*.

(6) Again, back again.

(7) Forð-faran = forð-feran.

(8) Pain, grief, sore.

(9) Ymb-clyppan to embrace, clip round.

(10) Ge-mæcca *mate* serves for both genders; thus correct n. 9, p. 111.

(11) Scúfan (III. 3.) to shore, push; G. schieben, D. schuiven.

(12) Lust.

(13) The A. S. dative, like Dianan above and Antiochian below.

(14) Measureless, immense; from or- and metan to mete, measure; see  
Additions. &c.

gana<sup>(1)</sup> wæron ge-togene<sup>(2)</sup>, and þa býman<sup>(3)</sup> ge-bláwene<sup>(4)</sup>, and þar weardþ blíðe ge-beórscipe ge-gearwod be-twux þám cyngre and þám folce. And heó ge-sette hyre gyngran<sup>(5)</sup> þe hyre folgode tó sacerde, and mid blisse and heófe ealre þære mægðe on Efesum, heó fór mid hyre were<sup>(6)</sup>, and mid hyre ađume, and mid hyre dóhtor tó Antiochian, þar Apollonio wæs þæt cyne-ricce ge-healden<sup>(7)</sup>. Fór<sup>(8)</sup> þá síð-þán tó Tirum<sup>(9)</sup> and ge-sette þar Athenagoras his ađum tó cyngre; fór þá sóð-lice þanon tó Tharsum mid his wífe, and mid his dóhtor, and mid cyne-licre fyrde<sup>(10)</sup>, and hét sona ge-læccan<sup>(11)</sup> Stranguilionem and Dionisiaden, and lædan be-foran him þar he sæt on his þrym-setle<sup>(12)</sup>.

(1) L. organum, commonly used in the plural, as *organs* formerly was.

(2) Lit. *drawn*; from some peculiar way either of playing the instrument or of blowing the bellows.

(3) Býme *trumpet*.

(4) Bláwan (II. 2.) *to blow*; G. blähen.

(5) Gyngre (*female*) *disciple, follower*, lit. *younger*; G. jünger is used in the same sense.

(6) Wer (fir) II. 2. *man, husband*; L. vir; aior was the Scythian (Herod. iv. 110), and the Celtic dialects have a similar word.

(7) *Had been kept for A.*

(8) *He, Apollonius went.*

(9) Copied probably from the L. "(ad) Tyrum" (as also Tharsum below); tó seems properly to have always governed the dative.

(10) Fyrd (II. 3.) *army, array, march, &c.*; G. fahrt *journey, &c.*

(11) I. 2 *to seize, catch.*

(12) *Glory-seat, throne*; þrym II. 2., setl III. 1.

IX.—*Boëthius*. Cap. xvii.<sup>(1)</sup>

\* \* King Ælfred translated Boëthius de Consolatione Philosophiæ, interweaving much original matter of his own: the following is his expansion of 3 or 4 lines, lib. II. prosa 7.

---

Hú þæt Mórd<sup>(2)</sup> sæde þæt him næfre seó mægð and seó gitsung<sup>(3)</sup> for-wel<sup>(4)</sup> ne lícode<sup>(5)</sup>, bútan tó láðe<sup>(6)</sup> he tilade<sup>(7)</sup>.

---

þá se Wís-dóm þá þis leóð<sup>(8)</sup> a-sungen hæfde, þá ge-swígode<sup>(9)</sup> he, and þá and-sworede þæt Mórd and þus cwæð: Ea-lá Ge-scead-wísnes<sup>(10)</sup>! hwæt<sup>(11)</sup> þú wást þæt me næfre seó gitsung and seó ge-mægð þisses eorð-lícan an-wealdes for-wel ne lícode, ne ic ealles for-swíðe ne gyrnde þisses eorð-lícan ríces. Búton lá ic wilnode þeah and-weorces<sup>(12)</sup> tó þám weorce

(1) From Mr. Cardale's edition, slightly altered.

(2) II. 1. neuter, while G. muth is masculine: another exception to the general rule, pp. 8, 9.

(3) II. 3. *desire, covetousness*; gitsian *to covet*.

(4) *Very well, too well*; for- is sometimes intensive; for-nean *well nigh*, for-swíðe *too much, excessively*.

(5) See p. 86.

(6) *Unwillingly*; see p. 70: láð (1.) *hateful, loathsome*.

(7) Tilian (teolian) *to toil, till, &c.*: see p. 42.

(8) III. 1. *song, lay*; G. lied.

(9) Swígian *to be silent*; G. schweigen.

(10) *Reason, discretion*; sceadan (p. 54.) *to divide, discriminate, &c.*; G. scheiden.

(11) Hwæt, and lá (below) are often used as expletives.

(12) And-weorc (II. 1.) *matter, material, substance*.

þe me be-boden wæs tó wyrcanne; þæt wæs þæt ic un-fracod-líce<sup>(1)</sup> and ge-rísen-líce<sup>(2)</sup> mihte steóran<sup>(3)</sup> and reccan<sup>(4)</sup> þone an-weald þe me be-fæst wæs. Hwæt þú wást þæt nán mon ne mæg nánne cræft cýðan<sup>(5)</sup>, ne nánne an-weald reccan ne steóran, búton tólum<sup>(6)</sup> and and-weorce: þæt býð ælces cræftes and-weorc, þæt mon þone cræft búton<sup>(7)</sup> wyrcan ne mæg. Þæt býð þonne cyninges and-weorc and his tól mid tó rícsianne<sup>(8)</sup>, þæt he hæbbe his land ful-mannod<sup>(9)</sup>: he sceal hæbban ge-bed-men<sup>(10)</sup>, and fyrd-men<sup>(11)</sup>, and weorc-men. Hwæt þú wást þætte bútan þissum tólum nán cyning his cræft ne mæg cýðan. Þæt is eác his and-weorc þæt he hæbban sceal tó þám tólum, þám þrym ge-ferscipum<sup>(12)</sup> bi-wiste<sup>(13)</sup>; þæt is þonne heora bi-wist, land tó búgienne<sup>(14)</sup>, and gífta<sup>(15)</sup>, and wæpna<sup>(16)</sup>, and mete, and ealo<sup>(17)</sup>, and cláðas<sup>(18)</sup>, and ge-hwæt

(1) Fracod (I.) *vile, shameful*.

(2) Ge-rísen-líc (II.) *fit, proper*; hit ge-ríst it is *fit, becoming*, = L. decet.

(3) Or stýran (I. 2.) *to steer, guide, govern*; G. steuern, D. stuuren.

(4) I. 3 *reckon for, give an account of*.

(5) *To make known, show forth, practise*.

(6) Tól (II. 1.) *tool*.

(7) Þæt—búton *without which*.

(8) *To rule with*: rícsian, (ríxian); L. reg-ere, rex-i.

(9) Mannian *to man*.

(10) *Prayer-men, clergy*.

(11) *Army-men, soldiers*.

(12) Ge-ferscipe (II. 2.) *company*; ge-fera *companion*, O. fere.

(13) Bi-wist (II. 3.) *provision, food*: wist *feast*, &c.

(14) Búgian=búan.

(15) Gift (II. 3.) *gift*; plur. gífta usually means *marriage*.

(16) Wæpen (III. 1.) *weapon*; D. wapen.

(17) Ealo (-u) (III. 3. *ale*.

(18) Cláð (II. 2.) *cloth, garment*; G. kleid.

þæs þe þa þreo ge-ferscipas be-hófiad: ne mæg he bútan þissum þás tól ge-healdan, ne bútan þissum tólum nán þára þinga wyrcean þe him be-boden is tó wyrccanne. For-þý ic wilnode and-weorces þone an-weald mid tó ge-reccenne, þæt míne cræftas and an-weald ne wurden for-gitene and for-holene<sup>(1)</sup>; for-þám ælc cræft and ælc an-weald býð sona for-ealdod<sup>(2)</sup>. and for-swígod<sup>(3)</sup>, gif he býð bútan Wís-dóme; for-þám-þe hwæt-swá<sup>(4)</sup> þurh dysige<sup>(5)</sup> ge-dón býð, ne mæg hit nán mon næfre tó cræfte ge-reccan. þæt is nú hraðost tó secganne þæt ic wilnode weorð-ful-líce<sup>(6)</sup> tó lybbanne þá-hwile-þe ic lyfode, and æfter mínum life þám monnum tó láefanne þe æfter me wæren mín ge-mynd<sup>(7)</sup> on gódum weorcum.

---

Cap. xxxiv. 10.

\* \* A free translation of part of prosa ii. lib. III.

þá cwæð ic: Ne mæg ic náne cwise wuht on-gitan þára þe wíte<sup>(8)</sup> hwæt hit<sup>(9)</sup> wille oððe hwæt hit nille, þe un-ge-néd<sup>(10)</sup> lyste for-weorðan. For-þám ælc wuht wolde beón hál and lybban þára þe me cwise

(1) For-helan (II. 2.) *to hide*; G. ver-hehlen.

(2) For-ealdian *to wear out, perish from old age*.

(3) For-swígian *to pass in silence*; G. ver-schweigen; here and above mark the force of for-.

(4) Usually *swá-hwæt-swá*.

(5) *Folly*; dysig *foolish, absurd*; hence *dizzy*.

(6) *Worthily, honorably*.

(7) II. 1. *memory, mind*.

(8) Wíte singular agreeing with wuht and not with þára þe; see p. 78.

(9) Hit neut. while wuht is fem.

(10) Nédan=nyðan.

þincð, bútan ic nāt be treówum, and be wyrtum<sup>(1)</sup>, and be swylcum ge-sceaftum<sup>(2)</sup> swylce<sup>(3)</sup> nāne sáwle nabbað. þá smearcode<sup>(4)</sup> he and cwæð: Ne þearft þú nó<sup>(5)</sup> be þám<sup>(6)</sup> ge-sceaftum tweógan<sup>(7)</sup>, þe má þe<sup>(8)</sup> be þám óðrum Hú ne miht þú ge-seón þæt ælc wyrt and ælc wudu<sup>(9)</sup> wile weaxan on þám lande sélost<sup>(10)</sup> þe him betst ge-ríst, and him ge-cynde<sup>(11)</sup> býð and ge-wune-líc<sup>(12)</sup>, and þær þær hit ge-fret<sup>(13)</sup>, þæt hit hraðost weaxan mæg, and latost wealcwigan<sup>(14)</sup>? Sumra wyrta oððe sumes wuda eard býð on dúnum<sup>(15)</sup>, sumra on merscum<sup>(16)</sup>, sumra on mórur<sup>(17)</sup>, sumra on cludum<sup>(18)</sup>, sumra on barum<sup>(19)</sup> sondum<sup>(20)</sup>. Nim þonne swá wudu swá

(<sup>1</sup>) Wyrth (II. 3.) *herb, wort*.

(<sup>2</sup>) Ge-sceaft (II. 3.) *creation, creature*.

(<sup>3</sup>) Swylce—swylce answers to L. talis—qualis.

(<sup>4</sup>) Smearcian to *smirk, smile*.

(<sup>5</sup>) Nó=ná.

(<sup>6</sup>) See p. 30.

(<sup>7</sup>) Tweógan, tweón (III. 3. See p. 60.) to *doubt*, from twá; comp. *δοια-ζειν*, L. du-bitare, G. zwei-feln, from *δοια* (*δvo*), duo, zwei.

(<sup>8</sup>) Any more than.

(<sup>9</sup>) III. 2. *wood*; D. *woud*.

(<sup>10</sup>) Best: *sél good, excellent*.

(<sup>11</sup>) Kind, kindly, natural: ge-cynd (II. 3.) *nature, kind*.

(<sup>12</sup>) Common, usual; G. ge-wöhnlich.

(<sup>13</sup>) Where it takes root, draws nourishment, lit. bites: fretan (II. 1.) (G. fressen) to *eat, devour, fret*.

(<sup>14</sup>) Fade; G. ver-welken, P. welk.

(<sup>15</sup>) Dún (II. 3.) *down, hill, mountain*; hence *don* in local names: G. *düne*, D. *duin*, F. *dune* is a sand-hill near the sea.

(<sup>16</sup>) Mersc (II. 2.) *marsh*; P. mesh.

(<sup>17</sup>) Mór (II. 2.) *moor*; D. *moer*.

(<sup>18</sup>) Clud (II. 2.) *rock, cliff*.

(<sup>19</sup>) Bær (II.) *bare*; G. *bar*

(<sup>20</sup>) Sand, sond (II. 2.) *sand*.

wyrt, swá-hwæder-swá þú wile of þære stówe þe his eard and æðelo<sup>(1)</sup> býð on tó weaxanne, and sete on un-cyndre<sup>(2)</sup> stówe him, þonne ne ge-gréwd hit þær náuht, ac for-searað<sup>(3)</sup>; for-þám ælces landes ge-cynd is, þæt hit him ge-líce wyrta and ge-lícne wudu tydrige<sup>(4)</sup>; and hit swa déð, fridað<sup>(5)</sup>, and fyrðrað<sup>(6)</sup> swiðe georne<sup>(7)</sup>, swá longe swá heora ge-cynd býð, þæt hí grówan móton. Hwæt wénst þú for-hwý ælc sáð<sup>(8)</sup> grówe innon þá eorðan, and tó ciðum<sup>(9)</sup> and tó wyrtrumum<sup>(10)</sup> weorðe on þære eorðan, búton for-þý-þe hí teohhiað<sup>(11)</sup> þæt se stemn<sup>(12)</sup> and se helm<sup>(13)</sup> móte þý fæstor and þý leng standan? Hwý ne miht þú on-gitan, þeáh þú hit ge-seón ne mæge, þæt eal se dæl, se-þe þæs treówes on twelf monðum ge-weaxed, þæt he on-ginnð of þám wyrtrumum, and swá úp-weardes gréwd oð þone stemn, and síð-þán and-lang þæs piðan<sup>(14)</sup>, and and-lang þære rinde<sup>(15)</sup> oð þone helm, and síð-þán æfter<sup>(16)</sup> þám bogum<sup>(17)</sup>, oð-þæt hit

(<sup>1</sup>) *Nature.*

(<sup>2</sup>) *Un-cynde (I.) un-kind, unnatural.*

(<sup>3</sup>) *For-searian to fade, become sear.*

(<sup>4</sup>) *Tydrian to produce, bring forth, from tudor, tudr (II. 2.) offspring, progeny.*

(<sup>5</sup>) *Friðian to make flourish, grow well; frið II. 2. peace, G. friede.*

(<sup>6</sup>) *Fyrðrian to further, forward, assist, from forð.*

(<sup>7</sup>) *Willingly, readily, earnestly; G. gerne.*

(<sup>8</sup>) *Sáð (II. 1.) seed; G. saat, D. zaad.*

(<sup>9</sup>) *Cið (II. 2.) shoot, sprout.*

(<sup>10</sup>) *Wyrtruma root.*

(<sup>11</sup>) *Teohhian to resolve, endeavour.*

(<sup>12</sup>) *Stem, trunk.*

(<sup>13</sup>) *Crown, head, top, helm-et.*

(<sup>14</sup>) *Piða pith; D. pit.*

(<sup>15</sup>) *Rind (II. 3.) rind, bark; G. rinde.*

(<sup>16</sup>) *Along; like L. secundum.*

(<sup>17</sup>) *Boh (II. 2.) bough.*

út-a-springð<sup>(1)</sup> on leáfum<sup>(2)</sup>, and on blostmum<sup>(3)</sup>, and on blædum<sup>(4)</sup>? Hwý ne miht þú on-gitan þætte ælc wuht cwices býð innan-weard hnescost<sup>(5)</sup>, and útan-weard heardost? Hwæt þú miht ge-seón hú þæt treów býð útan ge-scyrped<sup>(6)</sup>, and be-wæfed<sup>(7)</sup> mid þære rinde wið þone winter, and wið þa stearc-an<sup>(8)</sup> stormas, and eác wið þære sunnan háto on sumera<sup>(9)</sup>. Hwá mæg þæt he ne wundrige swylcra ge-sceafta úres Sceoppendes<sup>(10)</sup>, and huru<sup>(11)</sup> þæs Sceoppendes? And þeah we his nú wundrien, hwylc úre mæg a-reccan<sup>(12)</sup> medem-líce<sup>(13)</sup> úres Sceoppendes willan, and an-weald, hú his ge-sceafta weaxað and eft waniað<sup>(14)</sup> þonne þæs tíma<sup>(15)</sup> cymð, and of heora sæde weorðað eft ge-ed-níwade<sup>(16)</sup>, swylce hí þonne wurdon tó ed-sceafta<sup>(17)</sup>?

(1) Ut-a-springan (III. 1.) *to spring, shoot out.*

(2) Leáf (II. 1.) *leaf*; G. laub.

(3) Blostm (II. 2.) *blossom*; D. bloessem.

(4) Blæd (II. 3.) *fruit, branch*; G. blatt, D. blad *leaf, blade.*

(5) Hnesc (I.) *soft, tender, nesh.*

(6) Ge-scyrpan (I. 2.) *to scarf, cover*; sceorp (II. 1.) *scarf.*

(7) Be-wæfan (I. 2.) *to clothe*; wæfels *garment.*

(8) Stearc (I.) *stark, strong, violent*; G. stark.

(9) See p. 15.

(10) Sceoppend or Scyppend (p. 5.) *Creator*; scyppan *to create*; G. schaffen, schöpfen, D. scheppen.

(11) *At least, at all events.*

(12) *Reckon, tell up.*

(13) *Fitly, worthily*; medeme *middling, moderate, meet.*

(14) Wanian *to wane*, from wana *want.*

(15) *The season for that.*

(16) See p. 42.

(17) Ed-scaft (II. 3.) *new creation: as if they then became newly created.*

## CHAPTER IX.

---

### VERSE EXTRACTS.

---

#### I.—*Narrative Verse.*

Anglo-Saxon Poetry is of various kinds, distinguished by rime, by alliteration, or by both; the commonest however only, termed Narrative Verse, will be here described. Its chief characteristic is *Alliteration*<sup>(1)</sup>, or the correspondence of the first letters of a certain number of the most important words in each line of a couplet, two called *sub-letters* riming thus together in the first line, and answering to a third called the *chief letter* in the second. The first line has often but one sub-letter and never more than two; the second never more than one chief letter. The length of the lines varies much, each however must contain at least two emphatic or root syllables, with one or more unemphatic, that is prefixes, terminations, &c.: few lines have less than four syllables, two emphatic, and two unemphatic, and some

(<sup>1</sup>) Alliteration is found in the Latin poetry of the middle ages, sometimes combined with line and final rime, and syllabic metre; it was used more or less in England along with other kinds of rime till a late period, and is still usual in the Scandinavian tongues. The Vision of Piers Ploughman (1350) is a long and regular specimen of English alliterative poetry, on the above rules. For a full account of the A.S. versification, see Rask's Grammar, pp. 136—68.

have as many as eight or nine, or even more. For example <sup>(1)</sup> :

Hú lomp <sup>(2)</sup> eów on lāde <sup>(3)</sup>	How befell it you on <i>your</i> voyage
leófa Beó-wulf,	dear Beówulf,
þá þú færinga feor ge-hogodeſt ſæcce <sup>(4)</sup> ſécean ofer ſealt wæter, hilde <sup>(5)</sup> tó Heorote <sup>(6)</sup> ?	when thou ſuddenly far off determinedſt warfare to ſeek over <i>the</i> ſalt water, battle at Heorot ?
Ac þú Hróð-gáre wið cúðne wean <sup>(7)</sup> wihte ge-bétteſt <sup>(8)</sup> , márum þeódne <sup>(9)</sup> ?	Hast thou then Hróthgár againſt <i>his</i> known plague ought bootèd, <i>the</i> famous prince ?

Here the firſt couplet has in the firſt line two ſub-letters, the *l* in *lomp* and *lāde*, answering to the chief letter, the *l* in *leófa* in the ſecond. The third line has but one ſub-letter, the *f* in *færinga* which rimes with

(<sup>1</sup>) Beówulf, ed. Kemble l. 3969—79.

(<sup>2</sup>) Limpan (III. 1.) *to happen*.

(<sup>3</sup>) Lādu (III. 3.) *líðan to travel, journey, chiefly by ſea*.

(<sup>4</sup>) Sæc (II. 3.) hence *suck* of a town.

(<sup>5</sup>) Hild (II. 3.) *battle, war*.

(<sup>6</sup>) The palace of Hróthgár prince of a Daniſh tribe.

(<sup>7</sup>) Wea *evil, miſfortune*.

(<sup>8</sup>) Bétan *to profit, improve, do good to* ; bót (II. 3.) *boot, profit*.

(<sup>9</sup>) Though quantity and number of ſyllables ſeem no eſſential part of A. S. verſification, many lines will bear a more or leſs regular ſcanning ; thus moſt ſhort lines conſiſt either of two trochees, like the 2nd, 5th, and 11th above, or of a dactyl and ſpondee like the 10th : the 3rd, and 6th, alſo might be called imperfect adonics.

that in *feor* in the fourth. The third and fourth couplets have each two sub-letters like the first; the fourth again but one, *wið* being here not emphatic. The last line depends for its alliteration on the first of the next period; the couplet joining two lines by alliteration only, is often thus broken by the sense.

When the chief letter is a vowel or diphthong, the sub-letters must likewise be vowels or diphthongs, but need not be the same; as,

*U'tan ymbe æðelne  
englas stódon.*

*Eorðan æ'ht-ge-streón,  
æpplede gold.*

Without round *the* noble  
angels stood.

Earth's possessions,  
appled<sup>(1)</sup> gold.

In the first example the sub letters *ú* and *æ* in the first line answer to the chief letter *e* in the second; in the other *eo*, *æ'*, and *æ* rime together.

When the chief letter is double, the sub letters are usually double likewise; as,

*Frægn from-lice<sup>(2)</sup>  
fruman and ende.*

*Sceán scír<sup>(3)</sup> werod,  
scyldas lixton.*

*He asked prudently  
the beginning and end.*

Shone *the* bright host,  
shields gleamed.

---

The following prefixes and prepositions in composition are not reckoned as part of the alliteration, which

(<sup>1</sup>) Hence *d-appled*, as *asphodel* (G. *affadil*) has become *d-affodil*; *dappled-gray* is O. *apple-gray*, G. *apfel-grau*, D. *appel-graauw*: comp. F. *gris-pommelé*.

(<sup>2</sup>) From *brave*, *pious* &c. G. *fromm*.

(<sup>3</sup>) *Clear*, *sheer*; G. *schier*.

falls only on the first root-letter of the word before which they stand : viz. a-, be-(bi-), ge-, to-, for-, æt, oð, of, geond, þurh ; as,

A-rædde and a-rehte                      *That he should read and relate*

hwæt seó rún<sup>(1)</sup> bude.                      *what the rune boded.*

---

þonne be-hófað                      *When it behoveth*  
se-þe her wunað.                      *him that here dwelleth.*

---

þá ge-worhte he þurh his                      *Then wrought he through*  
    wís-dóm                      *his wisdom*  
tyn engla werod.                      *ten legions of angels.*

---

To-sweóp hine and to-                      *He swept and dashed it*  
    swende                      *away*  
þurh his swíðan miht.                      *through his strong might.*

---

þý-læs þú for-weorde                      *Lest thou perish*  
mid þissum wær-logan <sup>(2)</sup>                      *with these false ones.*

---

Se-þe æt-feohtan                      *Who to fight*  
frum-gárum <sup>(3)</sup>—                      *with the patriarchs—*

---

(<sup>1</sup>) Rún (II. 3.) a secret, mystery, letter, hieroglyph ; here the handwriting on the wall : hence to round, whisper ; G. raunen.

(<sup>2</sup>) Wær-loga a breaker of faith ; hence war-lock : wær (II. 3.) a promise, compact, loga a lyer, from leógan to lye.

(<sup>3</sup>) Gár (II. 2.) a (missile) weapon, spear (= L. telum), chief ; it forms part of many proper names , as Gár-mund, Eád-gár Edgar, &c.

þá hie gielp-sceaðan <sup>(1)</sup> Since them *those* braggart-  
 rebels  
 of-gifen hæfdon. had given up.

---

Síð-þán hie feóndum After they *the* foes  
 oð-faren hæfdon. had escaped.

---

Geond-folen fýre Filled through with fire  
 and fær-cyle <sup>(2)</sup>. and intense cold.

---

Wylm <sup>(3)</sup> þurh-wódon <sup>(4)</sup> *They the* flame had passed  
 through  
 swá him wiht ne sceód— so that them no whit hurt—

---

Big (bi), on, ofer, ymb, sometimes rime and some-  
 times do not ; as,

And begen þa beornas And both the warriors  
 þe him big stódon. who stood by him.  
 Big-standað me strange Stand by me strong com-  
 ge-neátas <sup>(5)</sup> rades  
 þa ne willað me æt þám who will not fail me at  
 stríðe <sup>(6)</sup> ge-swícan. the strife.

---

(<sup>1</sup>) Gilp (II. 2.) *boast* ; sceaða *enemy, robber, &c.*

(<sup>2</sup>) Fær (II. 2.) *stratagem* ; in composition it implies *suddenness, danger*, or the like ; fær-líc *dangerous* ; G. ge fahr *danger*, ge-fähr-lich *dangerous*. Cyle II. 2. ; hence *chill* ; G. kühle.

(<sup>3</sup>) Wylm (II. 2.) *heat, boiling* (= L. æstus) ; welan, weallan *to boil* ; G. wallen.

(<sup>4</sup>) Wadan (II. 3.) *to go* ; L. vadere.

(<sup>5</sup>) Ge-neát ; G. ge-noss, D. ge-noot.

(<sup>6</sup>) Stríð (II. 2.) G. streit, D. strijd.

þæt we þær eágum

on-lóciad.

On-hycgað nú

háligc mihte.

What we there with *our*  
eyes

look upon.

Think now on

*the* holy might.

And þurh ofer-metto  
sóhton óðer land.

Uton ofer-hycgan

helm<sup>(1)</sup> þone miclan.

And through pride

*they* sought another land.

Let us despise

the great Supreme.

Eorðan ymb-hwyrft  
and úp-rodor<sup>(2)</sup>.

Heofon ymb-hweorfest,  
and þurh þíne háligc  
miht—

Earth's circuit

and *the* upper sky.

*Thou* compasses heaven,  
and through thy holy  
might—

And-, un-, ed-, in, tó, &c. are deemed emphatic and therefore rime; as,

Him þá Adam  
and-swarode.

Him then Adam  
answered.

Un-lytel dæl  
eorðan ge-sceafta.

No little part  
of earth's creatures.

(<sup>1</sup>) Helm is the *top* of anything; see p. 133, n. 13.

(<sup>2</sup>) Rodor (II. 2.) *heaven, sky*.

Ne hí *ed-cerres*<sup>(1)</sup>  
*æfre móton wénan.*

Nor they for return  
 ever could hope.

Hæfde þá se *æðeling*  
*in-ge-þancum*<sup>(2)</sup>—

Had then the noble  
 fervently—

Him þæt *tácen weard*  
*þær he tó-starode*<sup>(3)</sup>.

To him that a token was  
 where he stared.

## II.—*Metres of Boëthius*<sup>(4)</sup>.

\* \* The following is King Ælfred's translation of  
 Boëthius, Lib. III. metr. I.

Se-þe wille wyrcean  
*wæstm-bære lond,*  
*a-teó of þám æcere*  
*ærest sona*  
*fearn*<sup>(5)</sup>, and *þornas*<sup>(6)</sup>,  
 and *fyrzas, swá-same*<sup>(7)</sup>  
*weód*<sup>(8)</sup>,

He that will work  
 fruitful land,  
 let him pluck off the field  
 first straightway  
 fern, and thorns,  
 and furzes, as also weeds,

(1) *Cer, cyr* (II. 2.) *turn*; hence *char* a turn of work; *cyrran* to turn, *re-turn*; G. *kehren*.

(2) Adverb formed from the dative plural; see p. 70. Comp. G. *ein-ge-denk* *mindful, thoughtful*.

(3) *Starian*; G. *starren*, D. *staaren*.

(4) Chiefly from the Rev. S. Fox's edition.

(5) P. *vearn*, G. *farn-kraut*.

(6) *þorn*; G. *dorn*.

(7) Same is connected with our *same*.

(8) *Weód* (II. 1.) D. *wied*.

þa þe willað  
 wel hwær<sup>(1)</sup> derian  
 clánum hwæte,  
 þý-læs he ciða-leás<sup>(2)</sup>  
 licge on þæm lande.  
 Is leóda<sup>(3)</sup> ge-hwæm  
 þeós óðru bysen  
 efn be-héfe<sup>(4)</sup> ;  
 þæt is þætte þinced<sup>(5)</sup>  
 þegna ge-hwylcum  
 huniges<sup>(6)</sup> beó-breád  
 healfe þý swétre,  
 gif he hwene<sup>(7)</sup> ær  
 huniges teare<sup>(8)</sup>,  
 bitres on-byrgað.  
 Býð eác swá-same  
 monna æg-hwylc  
 micle þý fægenra  
 lídes<sup>(9)</sup> wedres<sup>(10)</sup>,  
 gif hine lytle ær  
 stormas ge-stondað<sup>(11)</sup>,

that will  
 everywhere hurt  
 the clean wheat,  
 lest it germ-less  
 lie on the land.  
 Is to all people  
 this other example  
 even as needful;  
 that is that seemeth  
 to every man  
 honey's bee-bread  
 half the sweeter,  
 if he a little ere  
 the honey's drop,  
 something bitter tasteth.  
 Is eke in like wise  
 every man  
 much the gladder  
 of fair weather,  
 if him a little ere  
 storms assail,

(1) Wel prefixed is intensive ; wel-oft *very often*, wel-hraðe *very soon*.

(2) Cið shoot, growth of any kind ; hence kid, used either of a child or a young animal : comp. the uses of *imp*, *scion*, *sprig*, &c.

(3) Leóde people, persons ; G. leute, D. lieden.

(4) Be-hófan to need, be-hove.

(5) See Additions, &c.

(6) G. honig.

(7) Hwene, hwon a little, S. a wheen.

(8) Tear (II. 2.) tear ; G. zähre.

(9) Líðe tender, mild, lithe ; G. linde : observe the n dropped and the vowel lengthened, and see p. 2, and Additions, &c.

(10) Weder (II. 1.) G. wetter, D. weder.

(11) Observe the force of ge- ; see p. 64.

and se stearca<sup>(1)</sup> wind  
 nordan and eástan.  
 Nénigum þúhte  
 dæg on þonce<sup>(2)</sup>,  
 gif seó dimme niht  
 ær ofer eldum<sup>(3)</sup>  
 egesan<sup>(4)</sup> ne bróhte.  
 Swá þincð ánra ge-hwæm  
 eord-búendra  
 seó sóðe ge-sæld<sup>(5)</sup>  
 simle þe betere,  
 and þý wynsumre,  
 þe he wita má,  
 heardra hænda<sup>(6)</sup>,  
 her a-dreóged<sup>(7)</sup>.

þú meahht eác micle þý éð  
 on mód-sefan  
 sóðe ge-sældā  
 sweótolor ge-cnáwan,  
 and tó heora cyððe<sup>(8)</sup>  
 be-cuman síð-þán,  
 gif þú úp-a-týhst

and the violent wind  
 from north and east.  
 To none would seem  
*the* day delightful,  
 if the dim night  
 before over men  
 terror had not brought.  
 So seemeth to every one  
 of *the* earth-dwellers  
 the true happiness  
 ever the better,  
 and the winsomer,  
 as he more plagues,  
*and* hard afflictions,  
 here suffereth.  
 Thou mayst eke much the  
 easier  
 in *thy* mind  
 true happinesses  
 clearer know,  
 and to their country  
 come afterwards,  
 if thou pluckest up

(1) Stearc *stark, strong* ; G. stark, D. sterk.

(2) Þonc (þanc) (II. 2.) *thank* ; G. dank : comp. L. gratiæ and gratus.

(3) Eld, yld (II. 2.) *man, human being*.

(4) Egesa = *age awe, dread*.

(5) II. 3. from sél, sál *good*.

(6) Hænðu (hýnðu) III. 3. ; heán *abject, miserable*.

(7) (A-)dreógan (III. 3.) *to suffer* ; S. drie.

(8) Cyððu (III. 3.) also *acquaintance, knowledge, hence kith*.

ærest sona,  
 and þú a-wyrt-walast  
 of ge-wit-loca(n)<sup>(1)</sup>  
 léase ge-sældā,  
 swá-swá lond-es-ceorl<sup>(2)</sup>  
 of his æcere list<sup>(3)</sup>  
 yfel weód monig.  
 Síd-þán ic þe secge  
 þæt þú sweótole meaht  
 sóðe ge-sældā  
 sona on-cnáwan<sup>(4)</sup>,  
 and þú æfre ne recst  
 æniges þinges  
 ofer þa áne,  
 gif þú hí ealles on-gitst.

first forthwith,  
 and thou rootest  
 out of *thy* understanding  
 false happinesses,  
 as *the* husbandman  
 off his field gathers  
 many *an* evil weed.  
 Afterwards I say to thee  
 that thou clearly mayst  
 true happinesses  
 soon recognise,  
 and thou never wilt reck  
 for anything  
 above them alone,  
 if thou them quite under-  
 standest.

(<sup>1</sup>) (Ge-) wit (II. 1.) *wit, loca fold, locker, place shut or locked up.*

(<sup>2</sup>) Ceorl *man* (free not noble) *husband, churl*; S. carl; G. kerl.

(<sup>3</sup>) Lesan (II. 1.) *to gather, pick*; hence *lease, to glean*. G. lesen *to gather*  
*read*; comp. L. legere.

(<sup>4</sup>) Comp. G. er-kennen,

III.—*Cædmon* <sup>(1)</sup>.

\*\*\* *Cædmon*, the Anglo-Saxon Milton, author of the Metrical Paraphrase of parts of the Holy Scriptures, from which the following extracts are taken, was first a herdsman, afterwards a monk in the Abbey of Streonshalh or Whitby, then ruled by S. Hild: he flourished in the 7th century. For an account of him from Ælfred's version of Beda's Ecclesiastical History, see Mr. Thorpe's preface to his edition of *Cædmon*, and his *Analecta Anglo-Saxonica*, pp. 54-8.

## Part of Book I. Canto II.

Her ærest ge-sceóp	Here first shaped
éce Dryhten,	<i>the</i> eternal Lord,
Helm <sup>(2)</sup> eal-wihta,	Chief of all creatures,
heofon and eorðan,	heaven and earth,
rodor a-rærde,	<i>the</i> firmament reared,
and þis rúme <sup>(3)</sup> land	and this spacious land
ge-stadelode	established
strangum mihtum,	by <i>his</i> strong powers,
Freá <sup>(4)</sup> æl-mihtig.	<i>the</i> Lord almighty.
Folde wæs þá gyt	<i>The</i> earth was then yet
græse un-gréne;	with grass not green;

(1) From Mr. Thorpe's edition, more literally translated.

(2) See p. 133. n. 13.

(3) Rúm *wide, roomy*.

(4) G. frau (*noble*) woman, lady is connected with freá.

gár-secg<sup>(1)</sup> þeahte,  
 sweart<sup>(2)</sup> sin-nihte,  
 síde<sup>(3)</sup> and wíde,  
 wonne<sup>(4)</sup> wegas.  
 Þá wæs wuldor-torht  
 heofon-weardes gást  
 ofer holm<sup>(5)</sup> boren  
 miclum spédum<sup>(6)</sup> :  
 Metod<sup>(7)</sup> engla héht,  
 lifes Brytta<sup>(8)</sup>,  
 leóht forð-cuman  
 ofer rúmne grund<sup>(9)</sup>.  
 Raðe wæs ge-fylled  
 heáh-cyninges hæs;  
 him wæs hálíg leóht  
 ofer wéstenne,  
 swá se Wyrhta be-beád.  
 Þá ge-sundrode  
 sigora<sup>(10)</sup> Waldend  
 ofer lago-flóde  
 leóht wið þeóstrum<sup>(11)</sup>,

ocean covered,  
 swart in eternal night,  
 far and wide,  
*the* dusky ways.  
 Then was *the* glory-bright  
 heaven's Guardian's spirit  
 over *the* deep born  
 with great speed:  
*the* Creator of angels bade,  
 life's Distributor,  
 light come forth  
 over *the* wide abyss.  
 Quickly was fulfilled  
*the* high King's behest;  
 for him was holy light  
 over *the* waste,  
 as the Maker commanded.  
 Then sundered  
*the* Ruler of triumphs  
 over *the* water-flood  
 light from darkness,

(1) An obscure mythological word ; gár (II. 2.) *weapon*, secg *man*, warrior.

(2) *Black*, swart, swarthy ; G. schwarz, D. zwart.

(3) *Síd wide*.

(4) Won, wan *wan*, dark.

(5) Holm means also an *island* in the sea ; Steep-holm, Born-holm, &c.

(6) Spéd (II. 3.) *success*, *prosperity*, *speed* ; D. spoed.

(7) From metan to mete, *measure* : He who "measured the waters, and meted out heaven."

(8) Bryttian to distribute.

(9) II. 2. *ground*, *bottom*, *depth* ; G. grund.

(10) Sigor (II. 2.) = sige *victory*.

(11) Þeóstru = þýstru.

sceade <sup>(1)</sup> wið scíman <sup>(2)</sup> ;	shade from brightness ;
sceóp þá bām, naman,	created then for both,
	names,
lifes Brytta.	life's Distributor.
Leóht wæs árest	Light was first
þurh Dryhtnes word	through <i>the</i> Lord's word
dæg ge-nemned ;	day named ;
wlíte-beorhte ge-sceaft !	beauty-bright creation !
Wel lícode	Well pleased
Freán æt frymde <sup>(3)</sup>	<i>the</i> Lord at <i>the</i> beginning
ford-bære <sup>(4)</sup> tíð.	<i>the</i> teeming time.

---

Part of Book I. Canto XVI.

þá tó Euan God	Then to Eve God
ýrringa <sup>(5)</sup> spræc :	angrily spake :
Wend <sup>(6)</sup> þe from wynne <sup>(7)</sup> ;	Turn thee from joy ;
þú scealt wæpned-men	thou shalt to man
wesan on ge-wealde ;	be in subjection ;
mid weres egsan	with fear of <i>thy</i> husband
hearde ge-nearwad <sup>(8)</sup> ,	hardly straitened,
heán, þrowian <sup>(9)</sup>	abject, suffer <i>for</i>
þínra dáda ge-dwild <sup>(10)</sup> —	thy deeds' error—

(<sup>1</sup>) For *sceadwe* ; *sceadu* (-o) (II. 2.) G. *schatte*.

(<sup>2</sup>) *Scíma light, skimmer*.

(<sup>3</sup>) *Frymð* (II. 2.)

(<sup>4</sup>) Lit. *forth-bearing*.

(<sup>5</sup>) See p. 70—1 ; from *yrre* (II. 2.) *ire, anger* ; L. *ira*.

(<sup>6</sup>) *Wendan to turn, wend, go* ; G. *wenden*.

(<sup>7</sup>) *Wyn* (II. 3.) *pleasure* ; G. *wonne*.

(<sup>8</sup>) *Ge-nearwian, from nearu to make narrow, afflict, oppress*.

(<sup>9</sup>) Hence *throe*.

(<sup>10</sup>) II. 3. *dwelian to err*.

deádes bídan ;	death abide ;
and þurh wóp <sup>(1)</sup> and heáf,	and through weeping and
	moan,
on woruld cennan <sup>(2)</sup> ,	into <i>the</i> world bear,
þurh sár <sup>(3)</sup> micel,	through much pain,
sunu and dóhtor.	son and daughter.
A-beád eác Adame	Announced eke to Adam
éce Dryhten,	<i>the</i> eternal Lord,
lifes Leóht-fruma,	Author of life's light,
láð ærende <sup>(4)</sup> :	<i>the</i> dire errand :
þú scealt óðerne	Thou shalt <i>another</i>
éðel <sup>(5)</sup> sécean,	country seek,
wyn-leásran wíc,	<i>a</i> joyless dwelling,
and on wræc <sup>(6)</sup> hweorf-	and into exile go,
an <sup>(7)</sup> ,	
nacod <sup>(8)</sup> , níed-wædla <sup>(9)</sup> ,	naked, <i>a</i> needy beggar,
neorxna-wanges <sup>(10)</sup>	of Paradise's
dúgedum be-dæled :	blessings deprived :
þe is ge-dál witod <sup>(11)</sup>	to thee is <i>a</i> parting de-
	creed
líces <sup>(12)</sup> and sáwle.	of body and soul.

(1) II. 2. hence *whoop*.

(2) I. 2. comp. γενειν, L. genere ; hence *to kindle*.

(3) II. 1. *sore*.

(4) II. 1. from *an messenger*.

(5) II. 2. *native country, home*.

(6) II. 3.

(7) III. 1. *to turn, return, go*.

(8) G. nackt.

(9) Níed = neód.

(10) Neorxna-wang (II. 2.) a word of doubtful etymology ; wang is *plain, field*.

(11) Witian *to decide, decree* ; hence witod-líce.

(12) Líc (II. 1.) *corpse, dead body* ; G. leich, D. lijk : hence lich-gate *to a Churchyard, like-wake watching a corpse*, &c.

Hwæt! þú lād-lice  
 wróhte<sup>(1)</sup> on-stealdest;  
 for-þon þú winnan<sup>(2)</sup>  
 scealt,  
 and on eorðan þe  
 þíne and-lifne<sup>(3)</sup>  
 selfa ge-ræcan<sup>(4)</sup>,  
 wegan<sup>(5)</sup> swátig<sup>(6)</sup>  
 hleor<sup>(7)</sup>,  
 þínne hláf etan,  
 þenden þú her leofast,  
 oð-þæt þe tó heortan  
 hearde grípeð<sup>(8)</sup>  
 adl<sup>(9)</sup> un-líðe,  
 þe þú on æple<sup>(10)</sup> ær  
 selfa for-swulge<sup>(11)</sup>;  
 for-þon þú sweltan scealt.  
 Hwæt! we nú ge-hýrað

Lo! thou foully  
 crime didst commit;  
 therefore thou shalt la-  
 bour,  
 and on earth to thee  
 thy livelihood  
 thyself obtain,  
 wear a sweaty face,  
 thy bread eat,  
 while thou here livest,  
 until thee at heart  
 hardly gripeth  
 ungentle ailment,  
 which thou in *the* apple  
 erst  
 thyself swallowedst down;  
 therefore thou shalt die.  
 Lo! we now hear

(1) Wróht (II. 3.); wrégan *to accuse*; comp. L. crimen.

(2) Winnan (III. 1.) *to battle, struggle, toil*, also *to win*; ge-winn *labour*, &c.

(3) And-lifn II. 3.

(4) I. 2. lit. *reach*; G. reichen, D. reiken.

(5) II. 1. *to wag, move, bear*; hence wæg *wey (weight)*, wæg *wage*, wægn *wagon*.

(6) Swát (II. 2.) *sweat*; G. schweiss, D. zweet.

(7) II. 1. *jaw, cheek*; hence *countenance, complexion*, O. lere.

(8) Grípan (III. 2.) G. greifen, D. grijpen.

(9) II. 3. *ail, disease*.

(10) Æpl, æppel (II. 2.) G. apfel, D. appel.

(11) For-swelgan (III. 1.) *to devour*; G. ver-schwelgen.

hwær ús hearm-stafas <sup>(1)</sup>	where to us sorrow
wræde <sup>(2)</sup> on-wócon <sup>(3)</sup> ,	in wrath up-sprang
and woruld-yrmdo <sup>(4)</sup> .	and worldly misery.
Híe þá wuldres Weard	Them then glory's Keeper
wædum <sup>(5)</sup> gyrede,	with weeds provided,
Scyppend ússer,	our Creator,
hét heora sceome <sup>(6)</sup> pecc-	bade their shame hide,
an,	
Freá, frum-hrægle ;	<i>the</i> Lord, with <i>the</i> first
	garment ;
hét híe from-hweorfan	bade them depart from
neorxna-wange	Paradise
on nearore lif.	into <i>a</i> narrower life.
Him on laste <sup>(7)</sup> be-leác <sup>(8)</sup>	Behind them locked up
líðra and wynna	of comforts and joys
hyht-fulne <sup>(9)</sup> hám,	<i>the</i> hopeful home,
hálíg engel,	<i>a</i> holy angel,
be Freán hæse,	by <i>his</i> Lord's behest,
fýrene <sup>(10)</sup> sweorde.	with fiery sword.
Ne mæg þær inwit-ful <sup>(11)</sup>	May not there guileful
ænig ge-feran,	any journey,

(1) *Hearm* (II. 2.) *grief, harm, calamity*; G. *harm*. *Stafas* (plur. of *stæf*) forms the second part of several poetical compounds; as, *ende-stafas end, ár-stafas honour, &c.*

(2) *Wræð* II. 3.

(3) *On-wacan* (II. 3.) *to awake, arise, be born.*

(4) III. 3. from *earm poor.*

(5) *Wæd* (III. 1.) *weed, garment.*

(6) *Sceamu* (III. 3.) G. *scham.*

(7) *Last* (II. 2.) *footstep.*

(8) *Be-lúcan* III. 3.

(9) *Hyht* (II. 3.) *hope.*

(10) *Fýren* of *fire.*

(11) *Inwit* (II. 1.) *deceit, treachery.*

wom-scyldig<sup>(1)</sup> mon ;  
 ac se weard hafað  
 miht and strengðo<sup>(2)</sup>,  
 se þæt mære lif  
 dúgedum<sup>(3)</sup> deóre,  
 Dryhtne healdeð.  
 Nó hwæðre Æl-mihtig

ealra wolde  
 Adam and Euan  
 árna<sup>(4)</sup> of-teón,  
 Fæder æt Frymðe,

þeah he him from-  
 swice<sup>(5)</sup> ;  
 ac he him tó frófre let

hwæðre forð-wesan  
 hyrstedne<sup>(6)</sup> hróf<sup>(7)</sup>  
 hálgum tunglum<sup>(8)</sup>,  
 and him grund-welan<sup>(9)</sup>  
 ginne sealde ;

stain-guilty man ;  
 but the keeper hath  
 might and strength,  
 who that exalted life  
 to *the* good dear,  
 for *the* Lord holdeth.  
 Not however *the* Al-  
 mighty  
 of all would  
 Adam and Eve  
 means deprive,  
*the* Father from *the* be-  
 ginning,  
 though he from them had  
 withdrawn ;  
 but he to them for solace  
 let  
 nevertheless continue forth  
*the* adorned roof  
 with holy stars,  
 and them earth-riches  
 ample gave ;

(<sup>1</sup>) Wom (II. 2.) *spot, defilement.*

(<sup>2</sup>) Strengðo (-u) (III. 3.) = strengð II. 3.

(<sup>3</sup>) Dúguð (II. 3.) *virtue, benefit, nobility, chief men ;* from dugan.

(<sup>4</sup>) A'r (II. 3.) *honour, wealth, &c. ;* nouns of this class sometimes have a simple or weak genitive plural.

(<sup>5</sup>) Swícan (III. 2.) *to cease, depart from.*

(<sup>6</sup>) Hyrst (II. 3.) *ornament.*

(<sup>7</sup>) II. 2. D. roef.

(<sup>8</sup>) Tungel (III. 1.) *heavenly body.*

(<sup>9</sup>) Wela *weal, wealth.*

hét þám sin-híwum<sup>(1)</sup>  
 sæs and eorðan  
 tuddor teóndra<sup>(2)</sup>,  
 teóhha<sup>(3)</sup> ge-hwylces  
 tó woruld-nytte<sup>(4)</sup>  
 wæstmas fédan<sup>(5)</sup>.  
 Ge-sæton þá æfter synne

sorg-fulre land,  
 eard and édel  
 un-spédigran<sup>(6)</sup>  
 fremena<sup>(7)</sup> ge-hwylcere  
 þonne se frum-stól<sup>(8)</sup> wæs  
 þe hie æfter dæde  
 of-a-drifen wurdon.

bade the pairs  
 of sea and earth  
 producing offspring,  
 of every substance  
 to worldly use  
 fruits bring forth.  
*They* occupied then after  
*their* sin  
 a sorrowfuller land,  
 a dwelling and home  
 more barren  
 of every good thing  
 than the first seat was  
 which they after *that* deed  
 were driven from.

(1) Sin-híwa *mate, partner.*

(2) Teón *to draw, pro-duce.*

(3) Teóh (teóg) III. 1. *stuff, material*; G. zeug.

(4) Nyt (II. 3.) G. nutz, D. nut.

(5) Comp. L. fet-us, &c.

(6) Spédig *wealthy.*

(7) Freme (I. 3.) *advantage, benefit.*

(8) Stól (II. 2.) G. stuhl, D. stoel; hence *stool.*

IV.—*Beówulf*<sup>(1)</sup>.

\* \* The celebrated poem from which the following extracts are taken, relates the exploits of the hero Beówulf, King of the Weder-Geáts or Angles, about the middle of the 5th century. The author is unknown, and no mention of Britain occurs; the present text is supposed to date from the 7th century.

Part of Canto V.<sup>(2)</sup>

Stræt <sup>(3)</sup> wæs stán-fáh,	<i>The street was variegated</i>
	<i>with stones,</i>
stíg <sup>(4)</sup> wísode <sup>(5)</sup>	<i>the path guided</i>
gumum æt-gædere;	<i>the men together;</i>
gúd-byrne <sup>(6)</sup> scán,	<i>the war-corslet shone,</i>
heard, hond-locen <sup>(7)</sup> ;	<i>hard, hand-locked;</i>
hring-íren <sup>(8)</sup> scír	<i>the ring-iron bright</i>
song in searwum <sup>(9)</sup> ,	<i>sang in their trappings,</i>
pá híc tó sele <sup>(10)</sup> furdum,	<i>when they to the hall for-</i>
	<i>ward,</i>

(1) From Mr. Kemble's edition; the translation has been adapted to read line by line.

(2) Line 637—676.

(3) II. 3. L. strata (via) G. strasse, D. straat.

(4) II. 3. G. steig, hence stígan *to go, mount*.

(5) Wísian *to show, direct*, governing the dative; G. weisen.

(6) Gúð II. 3.; byrne (I. 3.) O. birnie.

(7) *Clasped, closed by the hand*.

(8) Hring (II. 2.) G. ring: íren (ísen) (III. 1.) G. eisen. The corslet was of *ring* or *chain* mail.

(9) Searu (III. 1.) *equipment, chiefly for war*.

(10) II. 2. L. aula, G. saal, F. salle.

in hyra grýre-geatwum <sup>(1)</sup> , gangan cwomon. Setton sæ-méde <sup>(2)</sup> síde scyldas, rondas <sup>(3)</sup> regn-hearde <sup>(4)</sup> , wið þæs recedes weal. Bugon þá tó bence,  byrnan hringdon,  gúð-searo gumena; gáras stódon sæ-manna searo samod æt-gædere, æsc-holt <sup>(5)</sup> úfan græg <sup>(6)</sup> : wæs se íren-þreát wæpnum ge-wurðad. þá þær wlonc hæled <sup>(7)</sup>  oret-mecgas <sup>(8)</sup> æfter hæledum frægn: Hwanon ferigeað ge	in their terrible harness, proceeded to go. <i>The</i> sea-weary men set <i>their</i> wide shields, <i>their</i> very hard bucklers, by the house wall. <i>They</i> turned then to a bench, <i>their</i> corslets laid in a ring, <i>the</i> war-trapping of men: <i>their</i> javelins stood sea-men's arms all together, ash-wood above gray: the iron-crowd was by <i>the</i> weapons honoured. Then there a proud war- rior <i>the</i> sons of battle after <i>the</i> heroes asked: Whence bear ye
---	--

(<sup>1</sup>) Grýre (II. 2.) *horror*; comp. G. es grauēt, O. it grows. Geatwe (ge-tawe) (I. 3.) = searu.

(<sup>2</sup>) G. müde.

(<sup>3</sup>) Rand (rond) *edge* (G. rand), *shield*.

(<sup>4</sup>) Regen- is an intensive prefix.

(<sup>5</sup>) Æsc (II. 3.) G. esche; holt (II. 1.) *holt*; G. holz, D. hout.

(<sup>6</sup>) G. grau.

(<sup>7</sup>) II. 2. G. held.

(<sup>8</sup>) Mecg (mæg) *kins-man, son, man*, connected with mæg, and maga, and all with Mac-.

fætte scyldas,	<i>your</i> thick shields,
græge syrcan <sup>(1)</sup> ,	gray shirts,
and grim-helmas <sup>(2)</sup> ,	and visor-helms,
here-sceafta <sup>(3)</sup> heáp?	<i>your</i> war-shafts' heap?
Ic eom Hród-gáres	I am Hróthgár's
ar and om-biht <sup>(4)</sup> :	messenger and servant :
ne seáh ic el-þeóðige	never saw I foreign
þus manige men	thus many men
móðig-lícran :	haughtier :
wén <sup>(5)</sup> is þæt ge for	I ween that ye for pride,
wlenco <sup>(6)</sup> ,	
nalles for wræc-síðum <sup>(7)</sup>	not for exile
ac for hyge-þrymmum <sup>(8)</sup> ,	but for magnanimity,
Hród-gár sóhton.	have sought Hróthgár.

---

Part of Canto XXII.<sup>(9)</sup>

Beó-wulf maðelode <sup>(10)</sup> ,	Beówulf harangued,
bearn Ecg-þeówes :	son of Ecgtheów :
Ge-þenc nú se mæra	Consider now <i>thou</i> the
	famous
maga Healf-denes,	son of Healfdene,

(1) Syrc (I. 3.) S. sark ; *gray shirts of iron chain-mail.*

(2) Grime (II. 2.) *mask, part of the helmet covering the face.*

(3) Scaft (II. 2.) G. schaft.

(4) Om- (am-) bihtu *office* ; G. amt.

(5) (II. 3.) *hope, expectation* : wén *is there is reason to suppose.*

(6) Wlenco (III. 3.) from wlanc *proud.*

(7) Wræc (II. 3.) *exile, &c.* ; síð *journey.*

(8) Hyge (II. 2.) *mind*, hycgan (hogian) *to think* ; þrym (II. 2.) *glory.*

(9) Line 2945—2998.

(10) Meðel (II. 1.) *discourse, speech.*

snottra <sup>(1)</sup> fengel,	prudent chief,
nú ic eom sídes fús,	now I am ready to de-
	part,
gold-wine <sup>(2)</sup> gumena,	patron of men,
hwæt wit geó sprácon;	what we two erst spake;
gif ic æt þearfe	if I at thy need
þínre sceolde	should
aldre linnan,	from life cease,
þæt þú me á wære	that thou to me ever
	wouldst be
ford-ge-witenum,	departed,
on fæder stæle <sup>(3)</sup> .	in <i>a</i> father's stead.
Wæs þú mund-bora <sup>(4)</sup>	Be thou <i>a</i> protector
mínum mago þegnum,	to my kindred thanes,
hond-ge-sellum <sup>(5)</sup> ,	<i>my</i> near comrades,
gif mec hild nime.	if me battle should take.
Swylce þú þa mǣdmas <sup>(6)</sup>	Likewise do thou the
	treasures
þe þú me sealdest,	that thou gavest me,
Hróð-gár leófa,	Hróthgár dear,
Hige-láce on-send:	to Higelác send:

(<sup>1</sup>) Snotor *prudent*; definite form, *se* being understood.

(<sup>2</sup>) Gold- implies *splendour, munificence*; wine (II. 2.) *friend* forms part of many proper names: Trum-wine, Eád-wine, *Edwin*, &c.

(<sup>3</sup>) Stæl (II. 2.) hence *stall*; G. *stelle*.

(<sup>4</sup>) Mund (II. 3) *protection*; forming part of several proper names; as O's-mund, Sigemund (G. Siegmund) *Sigismund*, &c.: bora (from *beran*) *one who bears*; the second part of several compounds.

(<sup>5</sup>) Lit. *hand-comrades*; ge-sel (II. 2.) G. *ge-selle*.

(<sup>6</sup>) Máððum, máðm, mǣdm *treasure, gift*.

mæg þonne on þám golde  
on-gitan

Geáta dryhten,

ge-seón sunu Hredles

þonne he on þæt sinc  
starað,

þæt ic gum-cystum<sup>(1)</sup>

gódne funde

beága<sup>(2)</sup> bryttan ;

breác þonne móste.

And þú Hun-ferð læt

calde láfe<sup>(3)</sup>,

wræt-líc<sup>(4)</sup> wæg-sweord<sup>(5)</sup>,

wíd-cúðne man,

heard-ecg<sup>(6)</sup> habban.

Ic me mid Hruntinge<sup>(7)</sup>

dóm ge-wyrce,

oððe mec deáð nimeð.

Æfter þám wordum

may then by the gold  
understand

the lord of the Geáts,

Hrethl's son see

when he at the treasure  
stareth,

that I in *his* munificence  
found a good

distributor of rings ;

*I* enjoyed *it* while *I*  
might.

And do thou let Hun-  
ferth

the old bequest,

the ornamented wave-  
sword,

the wide-known man,

the hard-edged have.

I me with Hrunting

glory will work,

or me death shall take.

After those words

(<sup>1</sup>) Cyst (II. 3.) *choice, excellence, the best of a thing* ; from ceósan.

(<sup>2</sup>) Beáh (II. 2.) *ring* ; F. bague : from beógan, búgan *to bow, bend*. Rings whether for the arm (earn-beáh), or neck (heals-beáh), were usual gifts from an A. S. or Scandinavian chief or prince to his followers.

(<sup>3</sup>) Láf (II. 3.) *leaving, relic, heir-loom*, as swords often were.

(<sup>4</sup>) Wræt *embossed or carved ornament*.

(<sup>5</sup>) Wæg (II. 3.) *wave* ; G. woge, F. vague : *adorned with wavy lines* as blades still are.

(<sup>6</sup>) Ecg (II. 3.) *edge* ; G. ecke.

(<sup>7</sup>) Hrunting was the name of Beowulf's famous sword.

Weder-Geáta leód  
 éfste mid elne <sup>(1)</sup>,  
 ná-læs and-sware  
 bídan wolde :  
 brim-wylm on-feng  
 hilde-rince <sup>(2)</sup>.

*the Weder-Geáts' prince*  
*hastened with boldness,*  
*nor answer*  
*would bide :*  
*the ocean-tide received*  
*the man of war,*

### Part of Canto XXVII. <sup>(3)</sup>

Cwom <sup>(4)</sup> pá tó flóde  
 fela módigra  
 hæg-stealdra <sup>(5)</sup>,  
 hring-net <sup>(6)</sup> báeron,  
 locene leoðo-syrcan <sup>(8)</sup>.  
 Land-weard on-fand  
 eft-síð eorla,  
 swá he áer dyde ;  
 nó he mid hearne  
 of hliðes <sup>(8)</sup> nosan <sup>(9)</sup>  
 gæstas ne grétte,  
 ac him tó-geanes rád ;

Came then to *the* flood  
 many proud  
 bachelors,  
*who* ring-nets bore,  
 locked limb-shirts.  
*The* land-guard found out  
*the* return of the warriors,  
 as he ere had done ;  
 not with insult did he  
 from *the* cape's point  
*the* guests greet,  
 but to meet them rode ;

<sup>(1)</sup> Ellen (II. 1.) *courage, valour.*

<sup>(2)</sup> Rinc (II. 2.) *man, warrior.*

<sup>(3)</sup> Line 3772—3835.

<sup>(4)</sup> Fela usually governs a genitive plural, while the verb often stands in the singular.

<sup>(5)</sup> Hæg-steald (II. 2.) G. hage-stolz ; the genitive plural in -ra seems to show that this word was originally a participle past ; and “ hæg-steald mon ” occurs.

<sup>(6)</sup> Another allusion to the rings of their mail.

<sup>(7)</sup> Lið, leoð (III. 1.) G. ghed, D. lid.

<sup>(8)</sup> Hlið (II. 1.) *lid, covering, cliff.*

<sup>(9)</sup> Nose I. 3.

cwæð þæt wil-cuman  
Wedera leódum,

quoð that welcome  
to *the* people of *the* Wed-  
ers,

scalcas<sup>(1)</sup> on scír-hame<sup>(2)</sup>.  
tó scipe fóron.

men in bright mail  
to *their* ship went.

þá wæs on sande  
sæ-geáp naca<sup>(3)</sup>  
hladen here-wædum,  
hringed stefna<sup>(4)</sup>,  
mærum and mǣdmum;  
mæst hlifade

There was on *the* sand  
*the* sea-curved bark  
laden with war-weeds,  
*the* ringed vessel,  
with horses and gifts;  
*the* mast lifted itself

ofer Hród-gáres  
hord-ge-streónum<sup>(5)</sup>:  
he þám bát-wearde<sup>(6)</sup>  
bunden golde  
swurd ge-sealde,  
þæt he síð-þán wæs  
on meodu-bence<sup>(7)</sup>  
mǣdma þý weordre,  
yrfe-láfe.

over Hróthgár's  
hoarded treasures:  
he to the boat-ward  
bound with gold  
a sword gave,  
so that he afterwards was  
on *the* mead-bench  
for *the* gifts the worthier,  
*the* heir-loom.

Ge-wát him on nacan

*He* departed in *the* ship

(<sup>1</sup>) Scealc, scalc *man, servant* &c.; G. schalk *rogue*. Mearh-scealc *officer* &c. *having the care of the horses* (mearh *horse*); hence *mar-shal*.

(<sup>2</sup>) Ham (hama) *covering, here armour*.

(<sup>3</sup>) Comp. G. nachen, F. nacelle.

(<sup>4</sup>) Stefn (stemn) (II. 2.) *stem, prow*; stefna *ship having a stem: ship with the stem adorned with rings*.

(<sup>5</sup>) Hord (II. 2.) *hoard, treasure*; ge-streón (II. 3.) *acquisition, wealth* &c.; streónan, strýnan *to acquire, get, beget*; hence *strain, breed*.

(<sup>6</sup>) Bát (II. 1.) G. boot.

(<sup>7</sup>) Meodo, medo (-u) (III. 2.) G. meth, D. meede.

dréfan deóp wæter;  
 Dena land of-geaf:  
 þá wæs be mæste  
 mere-hræglā sum,  
 segl<sup>(1)</sup> sále-fæst<sup>(2)</sup>;  
 sund-wudu<sup>(3)</sup> þunede<sup>(4)</sup>;  
 nó þær wæg-flotan<sup>(5)</sup>

wind ofer ýðum  
 sídes ge-twáfde<sup>(6)</sup>;  
 sæ-genga fór,  
 fleát fámig-heals<sup>(7)</sup>  
 forð ofer ýðe,  
 bunden<sup>(8)</sup> stefna  
 ofer brim-streámas,  
 þæt hie Geáta clifu<sup>(9)</sup>

on-gitan meah-ton,  
 cúðe næssas<sup>(10)</sup>.

to urge *the* deep water;  
 the Danes' land *he* left:  
 there was by *the* mast  
 a certain sea-vest,  
 a sail fast by *a* rope;  
 the sea-wood thundered;  
 not there *the* wave-floater  
 did

*the* wind over *the* billows  
 from *its* course hinder;  
*the* sea-goer went,  
 floated *the* foamy-necked  
 forth over *the* wave,  
*the* bounden ship  
 over *the* ocean-streams,  
 so that they *the* Geats'  
 cliffs

could make out,  
*the* known headlands.

(<sup>1</sup>) Segel (II. 2.) G. segel.

(<sup>2</sup>) Sál (II. 2.) *string*, &c. G. seil; hence sálan below to *bind*, *make fast*.

(<sup>3</sup>) From sund, comes *sound* (strait) G. sund.

(<sup>4</sup>) Þunian; comp. L. tonare; þunor (II. 2.) *thunder*; L. tonitru, G. donner, D. donder. Hence Þór Thor, the *thunderer*, (Jupiter) Tonans.

(<sup>5</sup>) Flota *floater*, *ship*, *sailor*; from fleótan (III. 3.) to *float*, *fleet*; F. flotter.

(<sup>6</sup>) Ge-twáfēan to *divide*, &c.; from twá.

(<sup>7</sup>) Heals (II. 2.) *neck*; G. hals.

(<sup>8</sup>) With ornaments *bound* or *wound* round the prow.

(<sup>9</sup>) Clif (III. 1.) *rock*, *cliff*; L. clivus, G. klippe, D. klip.

(<sup>10</sup>) Næs *nose*, *promontory*; L. nasus, G. nasc: hence -ness in Dungeness and the like.

Ceól<sup>(1)</sup> úp-ge-sprang  
 lyft-ge-swenced<sup>(2)</sup>,  
 on lande stód.  
 Hraðe wæs æt holme  
 hýð-weard<sup>(3)</sup> geara,  
 se-þe ær lange tíð  
 leófra manna,  
 fús æt faroðe,  
 fær wlátode :  
 sælde tó sande  
 síð-fæðme<sup>(4)</sup> scip  
 oncer-bendum<sup>(5)</sup> fæst,  
 þý-læs hine ýð-þrym,  
  
 wudu wynsuman,  
 for-wrecan<sup>(6)</sup> meahte.

*The ship up-sprang  
 air-compelled,  
 on the land stood.  
 Quickly was at the sea  
 the shore-guard ready,  
 who long time ere  
 the dear men's,  
 ready at the strand,  
 journey had watched :  
 he tied to the sand  
 the wide-bosomed ship  
 with anchor-bands fast,  
 lest it the force of the  
 waves,  
 the winsome wood,  
 might damage.*

(<sup>1</sup>) Ceól (II. 2.) *keel, vessel* (= L. *carina*) G. *kiel*: vessels called *keels* are still in use on the Humber.

(<sup>2</sup>) Lyft (II. 3.) G. *luft*, O. *lift*; *swencan to drive, urge*.

(<sup>3</sup>) Hýð (II. 3.) *haven, &c.*; hence *-hythe* in *Queen-hythe, &c.*

(<sup>4</sup>) Fæðm II. 2.

(<sup>5</sup>) Oncer, ancer (II. 2.) G. *anker*.

(<sup>6</sup>) For-wrecan (II. 1.) *to banish, injure, &c.* hence *to wreck*.

## APPENDIX.

1.—*Words spelt alike, but differing in accent, pronunciation, and meaning.*

\*\_\* This list, in addition to what is stated at p. 2, will prove the great importance of attention to the quantity of A. S. vowels, if only as a mean of distinguishing words otherwise of the same aspect, but in truth differing in every respect but spelling. Other spellings, by which some of the words may be further known from each other, are given between brackets.

Ac (ah) *but*.

ác (II. 3.) *oak*; G. eiche, D. eik.

a-gán *a-gone, a-go*.

ágan (anom.) *to own, possess, have*.

a-gen<sup>(1)</sup> (a-(on-)gean) *a-gain, a-against*; G. gegen, D. te-gen.

ágen *own*; G. and D. eigen.

an (on) *on, in*; ðv, L. ĩn, G. an, D. aan<sup>(2)</sup>.

an (ann) (*I*) *grant, from unnan*.

(<sup>1</sup>) P. *agen* or *agin*.

(<sup>2</sup>) The Dutch sometimes, as here, has lengthened a short vowel; on the whole however it will perhaps be found as safe a guide to the A. S. quantity as any modern language can be. In D. a double vowel or diphthong, in G. a diphthong, a vowel with h before or after it, or a double vowel, in general answers to an A. S. long vowel.

án *one, a* ; G. ein, D. een : L. ūn-us, εἷς<sup>(1)</sup>.

ar (II. 2.) *messenger*.

ár (II. 3.) *honour* ; G. ehre, D. eer.

aras ; plur. of ar.

a-rás *a-rose*, from a-rísan.

ædre *instantly, forthwith*.

ædre (I. 3.) *vein* ; G. and D. ader.

æl (II. 2.) *awl* ; G. ahl, D. els.

æł (II. 2.) *eel* ; G. and D. aal.

ban (ge-bann) (II. 2.) *ban, edict* ; G. bann, D. ban.

bán (II. 1.) *bone* ; G. bein, D. bein.

bær (II.) *bare* ; G. bar.

bær (*I*) *bare* ; G. (ge-)bar.

bær (II. 3.) *bier* ; G. bahre, D. baar.

ben (benn) (II. 3.) *wound*.

bén (II. 3.) *prayer*.

blæd (II. 2.) *fruit* ; G. blatt, D. blad (*leaf, blade*.)

blæd (II. 3.) *blast* ; G. blasen.

brid (bridd) (II. 2.) (*young*) *bird*.

bríd (brýd) (II. 3.) *bride* ; G. braut, D. brijd.

bude ; 2nd pers. imperf. of beódan *to bid*.

búde ; imperf. of búan *to cultivate*, &c. G. baute.

cneow (III. 1.) *knee* ; G. and D. knie.

cneów (*I*) *knew*.

coc (cocc) (II. 2.) *cock*.

cóc (II. 2.) *cook*.

feol<sup>(2)</sup> (feoll) (*I*) *fell* ; G. fiel.

(1) Here and often else, the *ν* has evidently been dropped before *σ* ; it appears in the neut. *ἐν*, and in the oblique cases *ἐνός*, &c. See Additions, &c.

(2) Quantity doubtful ; if long, both words should be shifted to II. below.

feól (fýl) (II. 3.) *file*; G. feile, D. vijl. <sup>(1)</sup>

floc (flocc) (II. 2.) *flock (of sheep &c.)*

floc (flocc) (II. 3.) *flock (of wool &c.)*; G. flocke, D. vlok.

flóc (II. 3.) *flook, (flat-fish, of an anchor.)*

for- (prefix) *for-*; G. ver-.

for *for*; G. für, D. voor.

fór (II. 3.) *going, journey.*

fór; imperf. of faran; G. fuhr, D. voer.

fore *be-fore*; G. vor, D. voor, L. pro, προ.

fóre; 2nd pers. imperf. of faran.

ful (full) (II. 1.) *cup.*

ful (full) *full*; G. voll, D. vol.

fúl *foul*; G. faul, D. vuil.

fyl (fyll) (II. 2.) *felling, slaughter.*

fyl (fyll) (II. 3.) *fill, glut*; G. fülle.

fýl (feól) (II. 3.) *file*; G. feile, D. vijl.

fyr *further.*

fýr (II. 1.) *fire*; G. feuer, D. vuur: πυρ.

geat (III. 1.) *gate*; D. gat *hole, opening.*

geát; imperf. of geótan *to pour*; G. goss, D. goot.

geoc (II. 1.) *yoke*; G. joch, D. juk, L. jūgum, ζύγον.

geóc (II. 3.) *consolation.*

geong *young*; G. jung, D. jong.

geóng; imperf. of gán; G. gieng.

God (II. 2.) *God*; G. Gott, D. God.

gód *good*; G. gut, D. goed.

heaf (III. 1.) *ocean, deep*; G. haf-en, D. hav-en *hav-en*,

F. hav-re.

heáf (heóf) (II. 2.) *grief.*

(1) D. v is = f.

ham *ham* ; D. ham.

hami (hama) (II. 2.) *covering, skin*.

hám<sup>(1)</sup> (II. 2.) *home, dwelling* ; G. heim, D. heem.

hama (homa, ham) ; see above.

háma *grasshopper*.

hig (II. 1.) *hay* ; G. heu.

hig *hey! oh!*

híg (hí) *they* : oí, L. ei, ii.

hof (II. 2.) *court, dwelling* ; G. and D. hof.

hóf (*I*) *hove* ; G. hub, D. hief.

hwæte *eager, brave*.

hwæte (II. 2.) *wheat* ; G. weizen, D. weit.

hyrde (II. 2.) *herd* ; G. hirt.

hýrde (*I*) *heard* ; G. hörte.

hyre (hire) *her* ; G. ihr.

hýre (heóre) *gentle, mild* ; G. (un-ge-)heuer.

is *is* ; G. ist, D. is :  $\epsilon\sigma\tau\iota$ , L. est.

ís (II. 1.) *ice* ; G. eis, D. ijs.

lam *lame* ; G. lahm, D. lam.

lám (II. 2.) *loam* ; G. lehm, D. leem.

leod̃ (liđ) (III. 1.) *limb* ; G. glied, D. lid.

leóđ (II. 1.) *lay, song* ; G. and D. lied.

lim (III. 1.) *limb*.

lím (II. 2.) *lime, s-lime*<sup>(2)</sup> ; G. (sch-)leim, D. (s-)lijm.

man (mann) (III. 2.) *man* ; G. mann, D. man.

mán (II. 1.) *sin, crime* ; comp. G. mein-eid, D. mijn-eed  
*perjury*, and our *man-sworn*.

<sup>(1)</sup> Hence *ham-let*, and *ham* (*hamp-*) in local names ; comp. G. Blindheim, D. Gorinc-hem &c.

<sup>(2)</sup> See p. 105, n. 9.

mæst (II. 2.) *mast* ; G. mast.

mæst *most* ; G. meist, D. meest.

men (menn) *men* ; G. männer.

mén *necklace*, &c. L. mon-ile.

metan (II. 1.) *to mete, measure* ; G. messen, D. meeten.

metan (I. 2.) *to paint*.

métan (I. 2.) *to meet* ; D. moeten.

ne *not*, O. *ne* ; L. and F. *ne*.

né (for ne-ge) *nor* ; L. nec, G. noch, F. ni.

nið (II. 2.) *man, warrior*.

níd (II. 2.) *envy, malice* ; G. neid.

sæd *sated*, hence *sad* ; G. satt: comp. L. sāt-is *enough*.

sæd (ge-sæd, -sægd) *said* ; G. ge-sagt.

sæd (II. 1.) *seed* ; G. saat, D. zaad<sup>(1)</sup>.

sæl (sel, sal, sele) *hall* ; G. saal, F. salle : αὐλή.

sæl (II. 2.) *time*.

sæl (sél) *good, excellent*.

spræc (I) *spake* ; G. sprach, D. sprach.

spræc (II. 3.) *speech* ; G. sprache, D. spraak.

syn (synn) (II. 3.) *sin* ; G. sünde, D. zonde.

sýn (seón) (II. 3.) *sight*.

sýn (sín) *his*, &c. ; G. sein, D. zijn.

to- (prefix) G. zer-<sup>(2)</sup>.

tó *to* ; G. zu, D. te, toe, tot.

tó *too* ; G. zu, D. te.

tol (toll) (II. 1.) *toll* ; G. zoll, D. tol.

tól (II. 1.) *tool*.

uton *let us*— ; L. utin-am ?

(1) D. z often answers to A. S., E. and G. s.

(2) G. z (= ts) answers to A. S., E., and D. t.

úton *without* ; G. aussen, D. b-uiten.

wæg (II. 3.) *dish, wey, weight, balance* ; G. wage, D. waag.

wæg (II. 2.) *wave* ; G. woge, F. vague.

wende (*I*) *turned, went* ; G. wandte, D. wende.

wénde (*I*) *weened* ; G. währte, D. waande.

werig *spiteful*.

wérig *weary*.

westan *from the west*.

wéstan (I. 2.) *to waste, ravage* ; G. ver-wüsten.

win (ge-winn) (II. 2.) *war, labour, gain* ; G. ge-winn.

win (wyn) (II. 3.) *pleasure* ; G. wonne.

wín (II. 1.) *wine* ; G. wein, D. wijn : οἶν-ος, L. vīn-um.

þa *the &c.* ; G. die, D. de : τῷ.

þá *then, when* ; G. da.

þara (þar, þær) *there* ; G. dar.

þára (þæra) *of the &c.* ; G. der.

## II.—Words spelt and accented alike, but differing in meaning.

Aldor (ealdor) <sup>(1)</sup> (II. 2.) *chief, prince* ; hence aldor-man.

aldor (ealdor) (II. 2.) *life*.

æ̅r (II. 1.) *brass* ; G. eher, erz, L. æs, ær-is.

æ̅r *ere* ; G. eher, D. eer.

æt (II. 2.) *food, eating*.

æt (*I*) *ate* ; G. ass, D. at.

æt *at* ; L. ad.

(1) The A. S. has a tendency to insert e ( y ) before a : hence the frequent modern pronunciation of *kyart* for *cart* and the like.

bát (II. 1.) *boat* ; G. boot.

bát (*I*) *bit* ; G. biss, D. beet.

beáh (II. 2.) *ring* ; F. bague.

beáh ; imperf. of búgan *to bow, bend* ; G. biege, D. boog.

beó (I. 3.) *bee* ; G. biene, D. bij.

beó (*I*) *be* ; G. bin, D. ben.

beón *bees*.

beón *to be*.

bere (II. 2.) *bere, bar-ley*.

bere (*I*) *bear*.

bil (II. 1.) *bill, faulchion* ; G. beil, D. bijl.

bil *bill, beak*.

blác *pale, bleak, hence black* ; G. bleich, D. bleek.

blác ; imperf. of blícan *to shine, blink* ; G. blinken.

bóc (III. 3.) *book* ; G. buch, D. boek.

bóc ; imperf. of bacan *to bake* ; D. biek.

byre (II. 2.) *son, child*.

byre (II. 2.) *event, time*.

byrne (I. 3.) *corslet*, O. birnie.

birne (*I*) *burn* (neut.) G. brenne.

cin (cinn) (II. 1.) *chin*, G. kinn.

cin (cynn) (II. 1.) *kin, race*.

cyst (cist) (II. 3.) *chest* ; P. kist, G. kiste, D. kist.

cyst (II. 3.) *choice* ; D. keus.

cyst ; 3rd pers. pres. of cyssan *to kiss* ; G. küsst.

deór (II. 1.) *animal, deer* ; G. thier, D. dier.

deór (dýr) *dear* ; G. theuer, D. duur.

ealdor ; see aldor above.

earm (II. 2.) *arm* ; G. arm, L. arm-us.

earm *poor* ; G. arm.

éce (II. 2.) *ache*.

éce *eternal*.

fáh *hostile*; hence *foe*.

fáh *variegated, stained, discoloured*.

fær (II. 2.) *stratagem*.

fær (II. 3.) *carriage, going*; hence *fare*.

fæsten (III. 1.) *fastness*; G. feste.

fæsten (II. 1.) *fast*; G. fasten.

fæt (III. 1.) *vat, fat*; L. vas, G. fass, D. vat.

fæt *fat*; G. fett, D. vet.

from (fromm) *bold, pious*; G. fromm.

from (fram) *from*.

fyllan (II. 2.) *to fill*; G. füllen, D. vullen.

fyllan (II. 2.) *to fell*; G. fällen, D. vellen.

fyrst (first) (II. 3.) *period, space of time*; G. frist.

fyrst (fyrmost) *first, chief*; G. fürst.

ge *ye*; D. gij.

ge *both &c.*

gif *if*, O. *gif*; G. ob.

gif *give*; G. gieb.

git (gyt, get, iet) *yet*.

git (gyt) *ye two*.

healt *halt, lame*.

healt (hylt, healded) *holdeth*.

hrán (hrón) (II. 2.) *whale*.

hrán; imperf. of hrínan *to touch*.

hund (II. 2.) *hound, dog*; G. hund, D. hond.

hund (II. 1.) *hundred &c.*; D. hond.

hylt (hilt) (II. 1.) *hilt*.

hylt = healt, healded; (see above) G. hält.

hyrst<sup>(1)</sup> (II. 2.) *forest*.

hyrst (II. 3.) *ornament*.

in (inn) (II. 1.) *dwelling, inn*.

in (on) *in* ; ðv, G. and L. *in*.

leáf (II. 1.) *leaf* ; G. laub, D. loof.

leáf (II. 2.) *leave* ; G. ur-laub, D. ver-lof<sup>(2)</sup>.

leán (II. 1.) *reward* ; G. lohn, D. loon.

leán (II. 3.) *to reproach, blame*.

leás *false, loose* ; G. loos, L. lax-us.

leás ; imperf. of leósan *to lose*.

list (lyst, lust) (II. 2.) *lust, desire, pleasure* ; G. lust.

list (II. 3.) *craft* ; G. list.

lið (leod) (III. 1.) *limb* ; G. glied, D. lid.

lið *fleet, navy*.

lið (licged) (*he*) *lieth* ; G. liegt.

mæg (II. 2.) *son, kin's-man* ; D. maag.

mæg (*I*) *may* ; G. and D. mag.

mægð (II. 3.) *maid* ; G. magd, maid, D. meid.

mægð (II. 3.) *tribe, kindred, generation*.

mæl (II. 3.) *time &c.* G. mahl, D. maal.

mæl (III. 1.) *spot* ; G. mahl, D. maal.

mæl *picture, image*.

mænan (I. 2.) *to mean* ; G. meinen, D. meenen.

mænan (I. 2.) *to moan*.

mearh (mear)<sup>(3)</sup> (II. 2.) *horse*.

mearh (mearg) (II. 3.) *marrow* ; G. mark, D. merg.

<sup>(1)</sup> Hence *Hurst, Lynd-hurst &c.* ; comp. G. Delmen-horst &c.

<sup>(2)</sup> Hence *fur-lough* ; or there may have been an A. S. for-leáf.

<sup>(3)</sup> There are traces of the E. masc. *mare* in local names and old sayings ; night-mare and G. nacht-mahr are properly masc. answering to L. incubus, incubo ; G. mähre *mare*, answers to A. S. myre, D. merrie.

mót (ge-mót) (II. 1.) *mote, meeting.*

mót (I) *must, may* ; G. muss, D. moet.

næs (nose) (II. 2.) *nose, ness, headland* ; G. nase, D.

neus, L. nas-us.

næs (ne wæs) *was not.*

næs (nas) *not.*

neát (II. 1.) *neat, nout, ox.*

neát ; imperf. of neótan *to use.*

nest (II. 1.) *nest* ; G. nest.

nest (nist, nyst) (II. 3.) *food, provision.*

ofer (ufor) (II. 2.) *shore, bank* ; G. ufer, D. oever.

ofer *over* ; ὑπερ, L. super, G. über, D. over.

odde *or*, O. *other* ; G. oder, L. aut.

odde (for oð-pæt) *until.*

rædan (I. 2.) *to read, guess* ; G. er-rathen, D. raaden.

rædan (I. 2.) *to rede, advise* ; G. rathen, D. raaden.

ríce (III. 1.) *realm, empire* ; G. reich, D. rijk.

ríce *powerful, rich* ; G. reich, D. rijk.

sæc (II. 2.) *sack* ; σακκος, L. saccus, G. sack, D. zak.

sæc (II. 3.) *war, battle.*

sæł (II. 2.) *time, occasion.*

sæł (sél) *good.*

sceaft (II. 2.) *shaft, spear* ; G. schaft.

sceaft (ge-sceaft) (II. 3.) *creature, creation.*

scír (II. 3.) *shire, division.*

scír *bright, clear, sheer* ; G. schier.

scyld (scild) (II. 2.) *shield* ; G. schild.

scyld (II. 3.) *debt &c.* ; G. schuld.

segen (II. 2.) *sign, ensign* ; L. signum.

segen (II. 3.) *saw, saying* ; G. sage.

seld (II. 1.) *seat, throne*.

seld (seldan) *seldom*; G. selten, D. zelden.

seó *sight, pupil of the eye*.

seó *she*; G. sie, D. zij: ñ, L. ea.

síde (I. 3.) *side*; G. seite, D. zijde.

síde (I. 3.) *silk*; G. seide, D. zijde.

síde *widely*.

síd (II. 2.) *time, journey &c.*

síd *late*.

síd *since*, O. *sith*; G. seit.

slege (slecge) (II. 2.) *sledge (hammer)*.

slege (III. 1.) *slaying*.

span (II. 3.) *span*; G. spanne, D. span.

span (I) *span*; G. spann.

stefn (II. 2.) *stem, prow*; G. steven, D. steeven.

stefn (stemn) (II. 3.) *voice*; G. stimme, D. stem.

stician *to stick, stab*; G. stechen }  
 stician *to stick, cleave*; G. stecken } D. steeken.

treówe<sup>(1)</sup> (trýwe) *true, faithful*; G. treu, D. trouw.

treówe (trýwē, treówd) (I. 3.) *truth, troth, faith*; G.  
 treue, D. trouw.

tyn (tin) (II. 1.) *tin*; G. zinn, D. tin, L. s-tannum.

tyn (tyne)<sup>(2)</sup> *ten*; G. zehn, D. tien.

wan (won) *dark, dusky*; hence *wan*.

<sup>(1)</sup> Treówe (adj.) and treówe or treówð (noun) with the G. and D. synonyms, never have the modern sense of our *true, truth*, L. verus, veritas, G. wahr, wahrheit, D. waar, waarheid; these are in A. S. sóð and sóð-fæstnis: sóð-fæst (used chiefly of persons) conveys both notions, as also that of *justice, veracity*—"honest and true." It need hardly be added that anyhow *Truth* is neither in word nor in deed "that which one *troweth*."

<sup>(2)</sup> Tyne seems rarely used except absolutely; see p. 34.

wan (wann) (*I*) *won* ; G. *ge-wann*.

weal<sup>(1)</sup> (wealh, wala) (II. 2.) *Gael, Celt, stranger, one not of Gothic race.*

weal (weall) (II. 2.) *wall* ; G. *wall*.

weard (II. 2.) *ward-en, guard-ian, keeper.*

weard (II. 3.) *ward, guard, keeping.*

wel (well, wyll) (II. 3.) *well, spring* ; G. *quelle*, D. *wel*.

wel *well* ; G. *wohl*, D. *wel*.

weorðe (wyrðe) *worth, worthy* ; G. *werth, würdig*.

weorðe (wurðe) from *weorðan* ; G. *werde*, D. *worde*.

wit (ge-witt) III. 1. *wit, sense* ; G. *witz*.

wit (wyt) *we two*.

wítan (anom.) *to know* ; O. *wit, wis, wot* ; G. *wissen*, D. *weeten*.

wítan <sup>(2)</sup> *to punish, blame* ; O. *wite*, D. *wijten*.

wód *wood, mad*.

wód imperf. of *wadan to go, wade* ; L. *vadere*.

wráð (II. 3.) *wreath*.

wráð *wroth*.

wyllan (welan, weallan) (II. 2.) *to boil* ; G. *wallen*.

wyllan (willan) *to will* ; G. *wollen*, L. *velle*.

þanc (II. 2.) *thank* ; G. *dank*.

þanc (ge-þanc) (II. 2.) *thought* ; G. *ge-danke*, D. *ge-dagte*.

þe *that, which*.

þe *or*.

þe *than*.

(<sup>1</sup>) Hence *Wal-es*, *Corn-wall*, *Wall-oon*, *wal-nut* (P. *welsh-nut*) G. *wall-nuss* (*wülsche-nuss*) *wall-fahrt* *foreign journey, pilgrimage* &c. See p. 118. n. 3.

(<sup>2</sup>) From *æt-wítan*, *ed-wítan* comes *t-wit*.

þe *thee* ; Dor. τε, L. te, G. dich.

þeáh *though* ; G. doch.

þeáh (þáh) imperf. of þeón *to thrive* ; G. ge-dieg.

### III.—Other words likely to be confounded by learners.

Æl- for eal ; as æl-mihtig *almighty*.

æl- (el-) ; as, æl-þeódig *foreign*.

beran (II. 1.) *to bear*.

berian <sup>(1)</sup> *to bare*.

birnan <sup>(2)</sup> (byrnan) (III. 1.) *to burn*, (neut.) G. brennen.

bærnan (bernan) (I. 2.) *to burn*, (act.) G. brennen.

búgan (beógan) (III. 3.) *to bow, bend*, (neut.) G. biegen,  
D. buigen.

bígan (I. 2.) *to bow, bend*, (act.)

búgian (= búan) *to inhabit &c.*

cleófan (clúfan) (III. 3.) *to cleave, split* ; G. klieben, D.  
klieven, klooven.

clifian *to cleave, stick* ; G. kleben, D. kleeven.

cunnan (anom.) *to know, be able*.

cunnian *to try, tempt, attempt*.

<sup>(1)</sup> The conjugation of verbs in -ian is not marked here or in the later notes above, as they can only be I. 1.

<sup>(2)</sup> Here and in the other instances below the neuter verb is complex, conj. II. or III., while the active is simple, conj. I., usually I. 2. ; the latter is commonly formed from the imperf. of the former ; as, birne, barn ; bærn, and the like : the E., G., and D. synonyms on the whole answer closely to the A. S. *Fall* for *fell*, *lay* for *lie*, *set* for *sit* are as wrong as *drink* for *drench*, or *drench* for *drink* would be. Comp. L. pendēre *to hang*, (neut.) pendere *to hang* (act.) &c.

cwelan (II. 1.) *to die, perish*; hence *quail*.

cwellan (I. 3.) *to quell, kill*; G. quälen *to vex &c.*

denn (II. 1.) *den*.

denu (III. 3.) *vale, dean*.

drincan (III. 1.) *to drink*; G. trinken, D. trinken.

drencan (I. 2.) *to drench, drown (act.)*; G. trän'ken, D. drenken.

a-drincan (III. 1.) *to drown (neut.)*; G. er-trinken, D. ver-drinken.

faran (II. 2.) } *to go, fare*; G. fahren, D. vaaren.  
feran (I. 2.) }

ferian *to convey, carry, also go*; G. führen, D. voeren.

feallan (II. 2.) *to fall*; G. fallen, D. vallen.

fyllan (I. 2.) *to fell*; G. fällen, D. vellen.

fleógan (fleón) (III. 3.) *to flee, fly*.

flígan (a-flígan) (I. 2.) *to put to flight*.

fúlian *to rot, grow foul*; G. ver-faulen.

fullian *to baptise*.

grætan (greótan) (I. 2.) *to greet, weep*; D. krijten.

grétan (I. 2.) *to greet, salute*; G. grüssen, D. groeten.

hangan *to hang (neut.)*; G. hangen.

hangan (hón) (II. 2.) *to hang (act.)*; G. hängen.

hátan (II. 2.) *to command, call*; G. heissen, D. heeten.

hatian *to hate*; G. hassen, D. haaten.

hæbban (habban) *to have*; G. haben, D. hebben.

hebban (II. 3.) *to heave*; G. heben, D. heffen.

heort (heorot) (II. 2.) *hart*; G. hirsch, D. hert.

heorte (I. 3.) *heart*; G. herz, D. hart.

hlast (last) (II. 3.) *foot-step*.

hlæst (II. 1.) *last, load*; G. last.

hnígan (III. 2.) *to stoop*; D. nijgen, G. neigen (act.)

hnægan (I. 2.) *to make stoop*.

hrím *rime, frost*.

rím (II. 2.) *rime, number*; G. reim, D. rijm.

hýran (I. 2.) *to hear*; G. hören, D. hooren.

hýrian *to hire*; G. heuern, D. huuren.

herian *to praise*.

hergian *to harry, ravage*; G. ver-heeren.

inc *you two*.

inca <sup>(1)</sup> *ill-will*.

irnan (yrnan) (III. 1.) *to run*; G. rinnen, D. rennen.

ærnan (ernan) (I. 2.) *to let run*.

lág (II. 3.) *law*; L. lex, lēg-is.

lagu (III. 3.) *water*; comp. L. lăc-us, G. lache *lake* &c.

leán (II. 2.) *reward*; G. lohn, D. loon.

læn (II. 1.) *loan*; G. lehen.

leom (lim) (III. 1.) *limb*.

leóma *light*; L. lūm-en.

leósan (III. 3.) *to lose*; G. ver-lieren, D. ver-liezen.

losian *to be lost, escape from, perish*.

lýsan (a-lýsan) (I. 2.) *to loose, re-lease, re-deem*; G. er-lösen.

letan (lettan) (I. 2.) *to let, hinder*.

lætan (II. 2.) *to let, leave*; G. lassen, D. laten.

liccian *to lick*; λειχειν, L. lingere, G. lecken, D. lecken.

lícian *to please, like*.

licgan (II. 1.) *to lie*; G. liegen, D. liggen.

lecgan (I. 3.) *to lay*; G. legen, D. leggen.

(1) The declension of nouns in -a here, and in the later notes to the Extracts, is not marked, as they can be only I. 1.

be-lífan (III. 2.) *to remain* ; G. b-leiben, D. b-lijven.

læfan (I. 2.) *to leave, make remain.*

a-lýfan (lýfan) (I. 2.) *to al-low* ; G. er-lauben, F. al-louer.

ge-lýfan (I. 2.) *to be-lieve* ; G. g-lauben, D. ge-looven.

lídan (III. 2.) *to go, voyage.*

lædan (I. 2.) *to lead, make go* ; G. leiten, D. leiden.

locc (II. 2.) *lock (of hair &c.)* ; D. lok.

loca *locker, fold, place locked or shut up.*

locu (III. 2.) *lock, fastening* ; also *locker &c.*

lutian *to lurk* ; L. lăt-ere.

lútan (leótan) (III. 3.) *to lout, bow.*

mæd (II. 1.) *math, mead* ; G. mahd, matte.

méd (II. 3.) *meed, reward.*

medo (-u, meodo) (III. 2.) *mead* ; G. meth, D. meede.

mæg (mæcg, mecg) (II. 2. plur. magas) *son, kin's-man.*

mæg (II. 2. plur. mægás) } *kin's-man* ; D. maag.

maga (plur. magan)

mæge (I. 3.) *kin's-woman.*

metan }  
métan } See I. above.

mætan (I. 2.) *to paint.*

múd (II. 2.) *mouth (of an animal)* ; G. mund, D. mond.

múða *mouth (of a river)* ; G. münd-ung.

a-rísan (III. 2.) *to a-rise* ; D. rijzen.

a-ræran (I. 2.) *to rear.*

sáwan (II. 2.) *to sow* ; G. sähen, D. zaaijen.

seówian (sýwian) *to sew.*

sincan (III. 1.) *to sink* (neut.); G. sinken, D. zinken.

sencan (I. 2.) *to sink* (act.); G. senken, D. zenken.

sittan (II. 1.) *to sit*; G. sitzen, D. zitten.

settan (I. 2.) *to set*; G. setzen, D. zetten.

sígan (III. 2.) *to sink, fall down*.

sárgan (I. 2.) *to throw down, subdue*.

springan (III. 1.) *to spring, burst* (neut.); G. springen.

sprengan (I. 2.) *to spring, burst* (act.); G. sprengen. <sup>(1)</sup>

swefan (II. 1.) *to sleep*.

swebban *to put to sleep*.

swefnian *to dream*.

swincan (III. 1.) *to labour*; O. swink.

swencan (I. 2.) *to make labour, oppress*.

swindan (III. 1.) *to vanish*; G. schwinden.

swendan (I. 2.) *to make vanish, dissipate*; G. verschwenden.

treów (III. 1.) *tree*.

treówe (trýwe) *true, truth*; see II. above.

wacan (II. 3.) (wacian) *to wake, watch* (neut.); G. wachen, D. waaken.

weccan (I. 2.) *to wake* (act.); G. wecken, D. wekken.

weder (II. 1.) *weather*; G. wetter, D. weder.

weder (II. 2.) *wether*; G. widder.

wíc (II. 1.) *dwelling*; οἶκος: see p. 103, n. 12.

wicg (II. 1.) *horse*.

wíg (II. 2.) *war*.

windan (III. 1.) *to wind, turn* (neut.); G. and D. winden.

wendan (I. 3.) *to turn* (act.), *wend, go*; G. and D. wenden.

<sup>(1)</sup> *To spring (a mine), blow up or open.*

wíse (I. 3.) *wise, manner*; G. *weise*, D. *wijze*.

wísa *wise man, guide*; G. *weiser*, D. *wijzer*.

wítan (anom.) *to know &c.*: see I. above.

ge-wítan *to depart*.

witian *to decide*.

wíte (III. 1.) *punishment*; O. *wite*.

wita *counsellor*; hence witenage-mót *parliament*.

wræð *wrath, anger*.

wráð *wroth, angry*.

þincan (I. 3.) *to seem*; G. *dünken*, D. *dunken*.

þencan (I. 3.) *to think, make seem to one-self*; G. and  
D. *denken*. <sup>(1)</sup>

(<sup>1</sup>) Comp. *δοκεω* *I think, seem*, *δοκει μοι* *me-thinks*.

IV.—*Additional Notes.*

Page 1.—Æ is not a diphthong, but a modification of a in the other dialects, for which it is substituted in certain cases, as before a mute, or a consonant followed by e; thus dæg, dæge, but plur. dagas, dagum; so also fæt, sæd, &c. : é answering to Goth. é, is not changed.

The A. S. wrote ı without a dot, ý with one.

þ probably gave rise to the O. abbreviations ye for *the* (þe), yt for *that* (þt), &c.

Page 2.—t was also written for oðð|e or, s óðt for sóð-líce *truly, verily*. Examples of the use of ñ are þā for þám *to the* &c., þon for þonne *then, when*.

In later times ȝ occurs for g, originally most likely a guttural, afterwards = y: hence the O. z still retained in some S. names, as Dalzell, Menzies, pronounced *Dalyell, Menyies*.

A long vowel is sometimes written double without the accent; as, wiid, good, gees, for wíd, gód, gés, like D. wijd &c.; in G. also the vowel is sometimes doubled in like manner. Where A. S. vowels are made long by contraction the dropt consonant sometimes appears, sometimes not in the modern Teutonic dialects; as, (sleahan) sleán, G. schlagen, D. slaan; gangan, gán, G. gehen, D. gaan; hangan, hón, G. and D. hangen. N has been often dropt and the vowel lengthened before other consonants, above all before s, (Note 1.) while it remains in kindred tongues; as, ést (*love, favour*), Goth. ansts; gós, G. gans, L. ans-er; ós (*god, hero*) G. ans; sóft, G. sanft; fús (*prompt*), Goth. funs; ús, Goth. and G. uns, L. nos, &c. This seems the case in Greek too, where ns is in like manner avoided; as, δους, δοῦσα (L. dans), στας, στᾶσα (L. stans), Σιμοεις, and many other words, in some of which the circumflex, as elsewhere, marks the contraction; the ν appears as soon as the σ is removed: neut. δον, σταν; gen. δοντος, σταντος, Σιμοεντος &c. In A. S. í, ý, ó, and ú before ð,

often answer to a cognate short vowel followed by *nd*, *nt*, or *nth*, in the other languages; as, *líðe*, (*lithe, soft*) G. *linde*; *síð* (*time*) Goth. *sinths*, Dan. *sinde*; *swíð*, Goth. *swinths*; *hrýðer*, G. *rind*, D. *rund*; *ýð*, L. *unda*; *óðer*, Goth. *anthars*, G. *ander*; *teóðe* (*tenth*), G. *zehnte*; *cúð*, G. *kund*; *gúð* (*war*), Goth. *gunths*, O. G. *kund*.

In the imperfects *stód*, *bróhte*, *þúhte*, *þóhte*, *n* is likewise dropt, and the vowel made long, *g* or *c* in the three last becoming *h*, as often else; *cunnan* and *unnan* also make *cúðe*, *úðe* instead of *cunde* (G. *konnte*), unde: *bohte* *bought* should most likely be short, not being so contracted. Something like these changes now and then appears in L.; as, *fundo*, *fūdi*, *fūsus*; *tundo*, *tūsus*, where the vowel in the present is long for prosodical purposes only. On the whole, though the Gr. and L. quantity sometimes agrees with the A. S., and the D. and G. very often, the Gothic is the only sure guide, or failing that, the Icelandic, or other old kindred dialects.

---

Page 4.—Sometimes too *g* is added before *e*, as *geów* for *eów*, with little or no change of sound (see p. 41); with a soft vowel before or after it, *g* seems to have been but lightly sounded, as *y*, or as a fine guttural.

---

Page 5.—Other changes are *io* for *eo*, and *ió* for *eó*; *seofon*, *siofon*, *heó*, *hió* · *u* for *o*, and *ú* for *ó*, especially after *ge*, which sometimes becomes *i*; *geong*, (*giung*) *iung*; *geó*, (*giú*) *iú*, *ió*; *Iótas*, *Iútas* *Jutes*: *ie* for *y*, *gyld*, *gield* *payment, tax* &c. *U* occurs mediævally for *v* in foreign names, as *Dauid* *David*; hence also for *f*, as *luuian* for *lufian* *to love*. Some of these spellings and those p. 5. are the variations of different times, some of different dialects, of which as yet but little is known with certainty.

---

Page 8.—A. S. *d* has sometimes become E. *th* (soft), often G. *t*; *fæder* *father*, G. *vater*. *þ* and *ð* usually answer to G. and D. *d*; *þreo*, G. *drei*, D. *drie*; *bróðer*, G. *bruder*, D. *broeder*; *ð* sometimes to G. and D. *t*; *forð*, G. *fort*, D. *voort*. See also p. 2 and addition thereto. The loss of these letters in E. and the substitution of the one unmeaning combination *th* for both the hard and soft sound is much to be regretted. The A. S. had seemingly no rule but custom for the

use of these two letters and sounds, as we for the latter, respectively, but as þ is found oftenest at the beginning, and ð at the end of a syllable, they are here so printed throughout.

Page 8—9.—The following are likewise exceptions to the general rule that the A. S. gender agrees with the German:

Neut. clif	G. klippe (f.)	<i>cliff, rock.</i>
— líc	G. leiche (f.)	<i>corpse.</i>
— sæd	G. saat (f.)	<i>seed.</i>
— sceorp	G. schärpe (f.)	<i>scarf.</i>
— big-spel	G. bei-spiel (m.)	<i>example.</i>
— toll	G. zoll (m.)	<i>toll.</i>
Masc. næs	G. nose (f.)	<i>nose, ness.</i>
— sál	G. seil (n.)	<i>cord.</i>
— tear	G. zähre (f.)	<i>tear.</i>
— an-(ge-)weald	G. ge-walt (f.)	<i>power.</i>
Fem. blæd	G. blatt (n.)	<i>fruit, leaf.</i>
— nyt	G. nutz (m.)	<i>use.</i>

L. has *clivus* masc. and *clivum* neut.; *nasus* is masc.

Page 9.—Swefen *dream* is fem. II. 3., and neut. III. 1.

Sceó *shoe* (G. *schuh* masc.) is masc. II. 2. (plur. *sceós*), or fem. I. 3. (plur. *sceón* O. *shoon*), or III. 3. (plur. (ge-)scý.)

Page 10.—But few certain rules can be given for the genders, especially from the terminations, of which several, as -e, -u, -el, -en, -er, contain nouns of all three. To some of the rules given above the following are exceptions and there may be more: *setl seat*, and *wered host* are masc.; -oð and -uð are interchangeable, and when from an adjective, fem.; as, *geógoð* (-uð) *youth*, from *geong*: -ð after a consonant is fem. chiefly when from an adjective, as, *strengð* from *strang*; otherwise sometimes neut. as, *morð murder*, or masc. as *monð* (*mónað*) *month*.

Compounds in -lác are neut., in -ræden feminine.

Nouns of the 1st declension are called Simple from the simplicity of their inflection, having but four endings for the eight cases of the two numbers, and also from the close likeness of the three genders; the 2nd and 3rd declensions are termed Complex, as having in general more

case-endings, and wider distinctions of gender. The former kind answer to the Gr. nouns making their dative plural in *-σι*, and the L. in *-bus*, the latter to the Gr. which form it in *-οις* or *-αις*, and the L. in *-is*. The terms Weak and Strong for Simple and Complex have greater *seeming* propriety when applied to other Gothic tongues, Gr. and L. for instance, than to A. S., since in the former case they in general need the help of another syllable to form their inflection, while A. S. needs only *-n*, and in the latter they have oftener the power of forming their cases without an additional syllable, than the A. S. has. Gr. and L. synonyms sometimes correspond with the A. S. in declension as well as in meaning and etymon; thus, simple: *ὄψ*, *aur-is*, *eár-e*; *ὁ-νομ-α*, *nom-en*, *nam-a*; *hom-o*, *gum-a*; complex: *ἐργ-ον*, *weorc*; *πυργ-ος*, *burh*; *via*, *weg*; *vir*, *wer*. Some nouns have both forms without a change of meaning; as, *heofon*, *heofone* *heaven*, *mann*, *manna* *man*, *þeów*, *þeówa* *slave*; some with; as, *múð* *month* (*animate*), *múða* *mouth* (*inanimate*); see List III. above; *lufa* and *lufe* are sometimes used indifferently, but usually the former stands for *love*, *affection* (*amor*), the latter for *love*, *sake* (*gratia*): *Godes lufu* *love of God*; for *sumes gódes lufan* *for the sake of some good*.

---

Page 11.—The neuter is placed first in the declension of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns, as the simplest and purest form of the word, the masculine next as agreeing with it usually in three or four cases out of the five, and the feminine last as generally unlike both. The accusative stands next after the nominative as agreeing with it always in the neut., and sometimes in the masc., while in the fem. it is derived from it; the ablative next as in some words derived from the accus.; and the genitive after the dative as sometimes derived from it, and last of all, as being in neuters and masculines in general most changed from the nominative. This applies more or less to Gr., L., G. &c.: in A. S. it is more apparent in complex than in simple nouns, more still in the indefinite inflection of adjectives, and most of all in demonstrative pronouns. As regards the genders, *twá*, *bá*, and *þreo* are noticeable exceptions.

---

Page 13.—The plural ending *-an* (G. *-en*) became in time *-en* which in *ox-en* (*ox-an*) is yet rightly used; *hos-en* (*hós-a*), and P. *hous-en* (*hús*), and *furz-en* (*fyr-s-as*) are wrong. To *brethr-en* (*bróðr-u*),

and *childr-en* (cildr-u) too it has been wrongly added; O. was *child-er* still in P. use: see p. 18, n. 3. *Chick-en* (G. küch-en) whence *chick* is shortened, is no more a plural than *maid-en* or *vix-en*; see p. 66.

Proper names in -a whether A. S. or foreign are thus declined; as *Gota Goth*, *Beda*, *Anna*: *Europa* follows the L. making accus. *Europam*; dat. and gen. *Europe* (the medieval form of *Europæ*): *Donua Danube* (G. *Donau*; well called by Milton *Donaw*), and sometimes *Sicilia* and the like are not declined. There are no A. S. fem. names in -a; all nouns in -a being masc., those now so written end either in a consonant or in -u, (II. 3. or III. 3.); as, *Mæð-hild*, *Eád-gifu*, since latinised to *Mathilda*, *Edgiva*. Other foreign names sometimes take the L. cases except the vocative; as, *He ge-seáh Simonem he saw Simon*. *Fram Decapoli from Decapolis*, *Iacobus Zebedei James (son) of Zebedee*. *Lazarus gá út! Lazarus come forth!* Masculines ending in a consonant often follow II. 2., as, *Salomon*, *Salomones*, *Salomone*; *Petrus*, *Petre*, and the like.

The now anomalous genitives in -ens of some G. simple nouns, as *herz-ens*, *nam-ens*, *will-ens*, *lieb-ens* (-würdig), are derived from the Goth. gen., *hairt-ins*, *nam-ins* (L. nom-inis) *wilj-ins* &c. A. S. *heort-an*, *nam-an*, *will-an*, *luf-an*. *Glaub-ens* is the only gen. of this kind which had a nom. in -en, *glauben*, (complex) Goth. *ga-láubeins*, A. S. (simple) *ge-leáfa*. *Herz-e* (Goth. *hairto*, A. S. *heorte*) is still in P. and poetical use: other G. simple nouns, as *heri* (A. S. *hearra*) have lost the final vowel. Feminines have in general lost the oblique -n in the singular, except in some phrases, as *auf erden* (*on earth*), *vor freuden* (*for joy*) &c. Many feminines and a few masculines properly complex now form the plural in -n, and in general the two orders have come to be much mixed.

---

Page 15.—Nouns in -e (II. 2.) sometimes keep the e in the plural; as, *end-eas*, *end-eum* &c.

*Freónd* and *feónd* being originally participials, derived, the former from *freógan* (G. *freien*) *to court, honour*, the latter from a lost verb akin to *fáh hostile* (whence *foe*), properly made the nom. and accus. sing. and plur. alike, but in time came to be inflected as II. 2.

It is only in monosyllables before one consonant that æ is changed to a; otherwise not; as, wæstm, pl. wæstmas (*fruit*) æcer, pl. æceras, æcras: thus too in adjectives; smæl, þæt smale, smalor, but fæst, þæt fæste, fæstor and the like.

Feld and ford originally belonged to III. 2; feld-u, ford-u like sun-u

---

Page 17.—Hand belongs to a lost class of complex feminines in -u hand-u.

---

Page 20.—Wædla *poor* hitherto called an adjective having the definite inflection only, seems rather a noun (I. 2.) a *beggar*; wædlian to beg: þearfa *poor* is commonly if not always used as a noun—a *poor man* wana *wanting* seems indeclinable.

---

Page 24.—The comparative and superlative endings -or, -ost (-oste), and -er, -est (-este) are sometimes used indifferently, but it would seem that the former oftener follow a, o, and u, the latter e, i, or y. see addit. note on p. 42

---

Page 25.—Several of these adjectives form adverbs regularly in -e and -lice (p. 70.) as lang-e, lang-lice, strang-e, strang-lice, hræd-lice, heág-e, heá-lice, eáð-e, eáðe-lice, sceort-lice, sóft-e, yfel-e, lytl-e.

---

Page 26.—*Lesser* for *less* is as wrong as *least-est* for *least* would be, or as *wors-er* for *worse* is. *Lest* is (þý-)læs(-þe), t being added as in *agains-t* &c. The ending -mest has no connexion with mæst *most*, though it also has become -most: our *upper-most*, *after-most* &c. have arisen from the wrong notion that *most* was added to the comparative.

---

Page 27.—*Ye* is therefore the true nom., *you* the accus. &c. "If any man say ought to *you*, *ye* shall say."

---

Page 29.—*Mine* and *thine* are therefore the older forms, from which *my* and *thy* are shortened; the former were long retained before vowels.

Page 30.—*Þissere* and *þissera* are older forms than *þisse* and *þissa*.

---

Page 32.—The *á-* in *á-wiht* &c. must not be confounded with the common prefix *a-* for *on-*, *an-* (p. 73); *á* is *ever*, *aye*, *ἀει*, Goth. *áiw-*, G. *je*, whence *áiwn*, Goth. *áiws*, L. *ævum*, *age*, *eternity*. *A'-* or *æg-* (p. 65) gives a *general* sense like G. *je*, in *je-mand some one*; *á-hwær some-, any-, every-where*, *á-hwænne some time, any time*, P. *some-when, any-when*: with the negative it becomes *ná never, no*; *ná-hwider no-whither*: *ná-wiht* is more regular than *nán-wiht*. *A'wðer* and *áðer* (if true readings) are contractions of *á-hwæðer*, and = *ægðer*, *æg-hwæðer*: *náwðer* is *ná-hwæðer* = L. *ne-uter*; hence rightly comes O. and P. *nother* · *neither* has arisen from *either*.

---

Page 33.—Our *one* and *a* are both descended from *án*; in *an* before a vowel the *n* has been restored; most languages use the same word in both senses; in A. S. *sum* is commoner for the article than *án*.

---

Page 37.—Verbs of the first conjugation are called Simple from the simplicity of their inflection, and its likeness in the three classes, or Weak as needing the help of another syllable to form their imperfect; those of the second and third are termed Complex from the various changes of vowel &c. they undergo, and the greater diversity of their classes, or Strong, as having in themselves the power of forming their imperfect. The analogy of the A. S. simple with the Gr. contracted verbs, and the L. 1st, 2nd, and 4th conjugations, and of the A. S. complex with the Gr. regulars, and L. 3rd conj. is worthy of attention. Some of the Gr. and L. synonyms agree in conjugation, as well as in meaning and etymology with the A. S.; as, simple: *ceall-ian*, *καλ-ειν*, *cal-are to call*; *tem-ian*, *δαμ-αιν*, *dom-are to tame*; *lix-an*, L. *luc-ere to shine*: complex; *graf-an*, *γραφ-ειν*; *to (en-)grave, write*; *brec-an*, *ῥηγ-ειν*, *frang-ere, to break*; *ter-an*, *τερ-ειν*, *ter-ere to tear* &c.; *flów-an*, *flu-ere to flow*; *drag-an*, *trah-ere to draw, drag*. Simple verbs are now in E. and G. usually called regular, complex irregular; in both many complex verbs have in course of time become simple, and this change is still going on. Thus *bake, sleep, leap, sweep, weep, fare, wield, fold, step, starve, creep, reek, lye*

*wreak, dive, shove, row, flow, swallow, brook* &c. from A. S. complex forms have become simple: others are in a fair way to do so, retaining only a complex imperf. or part. past, some of which are either gone or going out of use; as, *hung, hove, stood, shove, clomb, glode, bet, shod; waxen, hewn, laden, graven, shapen, washen, strewn, holpen, bursten, foughten, swollen* &c.

G. *walten* (*to rule*), *wallen* (*to boil*), *sähen* (*to sow*), *krähen* (*to crow*), *kauen* (*to chew*), *wachen* (*to watch*), *wathen* (*to wade*), *reuen* (*to rue*), *lachen* (*to laugh*), as also most of the E. synonyms, have become simple; others, as *backen* (*to bake*), *hauen* (*to hew*), *sieden* (*to seethe*) &c. are in the transition state. A few E. verbs from A. S. I. 2., and I. 3. have assumed imperfects (but not participles past) of a *seeming* complex form; as, *meet, met; lead, led; send, sent; build, built*; from *métan, lédan, sendan, byldan*. A very few A. S. verbs have both forms without change of meaning; as, *bringan; bringe, bróhte, bróht, or bringe, brang, brungen*; the latter however is rare.

---

Page 38.—Attention should be paid to the quantity of the complex or strong imperfects, both as compared with that of the present, and as to whether it is long throughout, or short throughout, or short in the first and third persons singular, and long in the 2nd, and the whole plural, or long in the first and third pers., and short in the rest. Thus II. 2. from presents some short, some long, and II. 3. from presents all short, make it long throughout, except some doubtful in the former; as, *healde; heóld, heólde* &c. *drage; dróh* &c. III. 1. has the present short, and the imperf. short throughout with a change of vowel; *binde; band, bunde; band, bundon*. II. 1. short in the pres. has the imperf. short and long; *brece; bræc, bráce, bræc, brácon*; except the *fæwinæa*; as, *geaf, geafe* &c., together with *com, come* &c., and *nam, name* &c. which are short throughout. III. 2. and III. 3. with long pres. have the imperf. long and short with a change of vowel; *drife; dráf, drife, dráf, drifon; clúfe; cleáf, clufe, cleáf, clufon*. Complex participles past are all short but some of II 2.

---

Page 41.—Verbs in *-igan* (for *-ian*) are often conjugated regularly

like I. 2.; as, *fyligan to follow*, imper. *fyligde*, imper. *fylig*, but part. past *fyligd*: see p. 42.

---

Page 42.—There seem to have been originally two distinct classes of verbs in -ian, both now included in I. 1.; the one forming its imperf. and part. past in -óde, -ód, the other in -ede, -ed; the former answering closely to the Gr. contracted verbs, and the L. in -āvi, -ātus, ēvi, ēt-us, and -īvi, īt-us, the latter to the L. in -ui, īt-us &c. In time -óde, ód were shortened, and then came to be confounded with -ede, -ed, many verbs being found with both forms; -ode, -od however seems to occur oftenest when the root-vowel is a, o, or u, -ede, ed when it is e, i, or y; see addit. note on p. 25: -ade, -ad is a modification of -ode, -od. The -de, -ed (-d) of I. 2. 3. is contracted from -ede, -ed, I. 1.; when the d is thus brought next a hard consonant it becomes t.

The characteristic c is not changed if l, n, or s stand before it; as, *elce (delay)* imperf. *elcte*; *drence (drench)* *drencte*; *wisce (wish)* *wiscte*; unless the n be dropt, as in *þince*, *þúhte*, and the like: it else commonly (in simple verbs) becomes h, as in *táce*, p. 42, &c.

---

Page 43.—The original form of the 2nd and 3rd persons sing. of I. 2, 3, II. and III. was *hýrest*, *hýreð*, *tellest*, *telleð*, *brecest*, *breceð*, *healdest*, *healdeð*, *dragest*, *drageð*, *bindest*, *bindeð*, *drífest*, *drífeð*, *clúfest*, *clúfeð* and the like, which often occur, especially in poetry: the shortened and modified forms *hýrst*, *hýrð*, *telst*, *briest* &c. given in the grammar are more modern, and commonest in prose.

---

Page 44.—All verbs seem at first to have formed their 1st pers. pres. in -o or -u; comp. -ow and L. -o: *haf-o* = L. *hab-eo*.

---

Page 50.—Most of the verbs in II. 2., and some in II. 3. are derived from the Goth. reduplicative verbs, which repeat the long syllable; the A. S. has kept only what may be called the literal augment, and that in but a few verbs; as, *héht*, *leólc*, *reórd*, from *hátan*, *lácan* (*to play, deceive*), *rædan* (G. *reden to discourse*), where the Goth.

has hái-háit, lái-láik, rái-ród from háitan &c. Some only alter the vowel, as sceape, sceóp, where the Goth. has sái-skáp.

Page 54.—Verbs in -án form their part. pres. in -ánde; sleán, sleánde.

Page 58.—Wríðan is an exception to the general rule that complex verbs change ð into d in the 2nd pers. sing., and in the plural of the imperf., and in the past part.: see cweðan p. 50, weorðan p. 57, and seóðan p. 60, which are all regular.

Page 62.—Complex participles past sometimes agree like adjectives with a noun, sometimes do not; as, Ða þing þe him ge-sende wæron *the things that were sent him*. Seó óðre naman wæs Tate háten *who by another name was hight Tate*.

The part. past in the pluperfect is sometimes governed in the accus. by the auxiliary hæbban, as, Ðá híg hæfdon hyra lof-sang ge-sungenne *when they had sung their song of praise*.

Page 63.—Un- sometimes, as in G., is not merely negative, but implies badness; un-þeáw *bad habit*, un-weder (G. un-ge-witter) *storm, bad weather*.

The prefix to- must be carefully distinguished from the preposition tó in composition; as, to-gán *to go asunder, separate*, tó-gán *to go to*; G. zer-gehen, zu-gehen: to- implies *division, dispersion of parts*, and hence often *destruction*.

Page 64.—For- gives in general a negative or bad sense, or is intensive, much like kara-; déman *to judge*, for-déman *to condemn*, κρινειν, κατα-κρινειν, G. ur-theilen, ver-urtheilen; bernan *to burn*, for-bernan *to burn up, consume*; καειν, κατα-καειν, G. brennen, ver-brennen; dón *to do, make*, for-dón *to un-do, ruin, destroy*; scyppan *to form*, for-scyppan *to transform, de-form*; for-fela *very many*. This prefix must not be confounded with the prepositions for and fore; (probably of the same origin, = L. pro); thus for-seón is *to over-look, de-spise*, G. ver-sehen; for-seón, fore-seón *to fore-see*, G. vor-sehen; for-gán *to for-go, do without*,

*perish*, G. *ver-gehen*, L. *per-ire*; *fore-gán* to *fore-go*, *go before*, G. *vor-gehen*, L. *præ-ire*. It is as wrong to write *fore-go* for *for-go*, as *fore-give* for *for-give*.

And- answers closely to *ἀντι-*, denoting opposition, reciprocity &c.; and-saca *denier*; and-wyrdan, and-swarian, *ἀντ-επειν* to *answer*; and-wlitan, *ἀντι βλέπειν*, to *gaze at*, *look in the face*.

The prefix *ge-* is in A. S. used oftener and more indiscriminately than in any kindred language old or new. Though originally conveying no notion of past time, it seems gradually to have acquired it, and to have become a kind of syllabic augment to imperfects, but especially to participles past, as in Dutch and German. In the formation of English it was by degrees dropt before all but participles past, where it first became *i-* or *y-*, and has since been lost altogether, surviving only as *a-* in some P. words. In G. and D. it is still in use before nouns, adjectives &c., but in general with a distinct effect on their meaning, referible to its original collective force. A. S. *ge-* sometimes denotes *the result of doing a thing*; as, *Ge-slóh þín fæder fáehða máste thy father by striking avenged the greatest of feuds*. His *feorh ge-faran oððe ge-irnan* to *save his life by going or running (to a sanctuary)*.

---

Page 65.—The prefix *or-* (left out in the right place) denotes want of a thing; as, *or-mæte im-mense, measure-less*, *or-trúwian* to *de-spair*, *or-sorh care-less, se-cure*: it must not be confounded with *or-* in *or-eald very old*, (G. *ur-alt*), from *or*, *ord beginning, point*, connected with L. *or-ior*, *or-igo* &c.

The ending *-el*, *-ol*, answers sometimes to L. *-ul-um*; *gyrd-el*, L. *cing-ulum*, *girdle*.

The primary meaning of *-ing* is *young*, and hence it forms patronymics, and terms of contempt &c.: *-ling* has been supposed to be derived from *-ing*.

---

Page 66.—Other feminines in *-en* are *menn-en* from *man*, G. *mann*, *männin*; *gyd-en* from *god*, G. *gott*, *gött-in*, D. *god*, *god-in*: in *-e*; *fyl-e*, *filly*, from *fol-a foal*; *wal-e* from *wealh* or *wal-a*, *Celt*, *stranger*; *webb-e* (or *webb-estre web-ster*), from *webb-a weaver*.

The ending *-estre* (like D. *-ster*) is feminine only, and the notion of thus forming nouns of contempt &c., as *pun-ster*, *trick-ster*, *road-ster* is modern.

The ending *dóm* is properly a noun (II. 2.) *doom, judgment, authority, dignity*: *hád* is also a noun (II. 2.) *state, condition, rank, Holy Orders*.

Page 67.—*scipe* (not occurring alone) is related to *scapan*, (*sceapan*), *to shape, form, create*, and denotes *form, mode, condition*; *land-scape*, or *land-ship*, (*land-scipe*) G. *land-schaft*, D. *land-schap*, should in rule be *land-ship*, unless borrowed, like a few other words, directly from the Dutch.

The adjective ending *-ig* answers to *ικ-ος*, L. *-ic-us*.

Page 68.—A. S. *-isc* had often a bad sense, which E., G., and D. *-ish, -isch, -sch* almost always have, except when added to local names; the three former often contrast with *-lic, -like* or *-ly*, G. *-lich*, which convey a good or indifferent notion; as, *folc-isc vulgar* (Chaucer has *pepl-ish*), *folc-lic popular*; *cild-isc child-ish*, G. *kind-isch*, *cild-lic child-like*, G. *kind-lich*; compare also *mann-ish, man-like, man-ly*, G. *männ-isch, männ-lich*; *woman-ish, woman-ly*, G. *weib-isch, weib-lich*; *girl-ish, maiden-ly* &c.

While *-ol (-ul)* answers in form to L. *-ul-us*, in sense it is more like *-ax*, commonly denoting a wrong propensity; as, *sprec-ol, cwid-ol*, L. *loqu-ax, dic-ax talkative, evil-tongued*; *et-ol*, L. *ed-ax greedy*. Sometimes as in *sóð-sag-ol truth-telling, deóp-þanc-ol deep-thinking*, it expresses a good quality.

*-en* (G. *-ern, -en*) usually denotes the material of which a thing is made; as, *stán-en of stone*, G. *stein-ern*; *treó w-en treen, wood-en*; *gyld-en gold-en*, G. *gold-en*; *lin-en lin-en, of lin or flax*, G. *lein-en*; from *stán, treów, gold, lin*. Several words thus formed are now obsolete; *ston-en, brick-en* &c. are still in P. use.

*-cund* answers to L. *-cund-us*.

Some adjectives are formed in *-ed* or *-d* like simple participles past; as, *ge-hyrned horn-ed*, (G. *ge-hörn-t*); *ge-sceód shod* (G. *ge-schuh-t*); the rest of the verb, if any, is here wanting.

Page 69.—c-, -n-, -s-, in these and the like verbs represent lost syllables; therefore *swin-s-ian* (*to make melody*) is no exception to the rule against ns in the same syllable; see p. 2. n. 1.

The verbal endings -ian and -an (-ειν, G. and D. -an) became in time -en and -e, the latter of which has in many cases been dropt, in all has lost its sound. Such verbs as *whit-en*, *black-en* are of modern use, *to white* and the like being the older form.

---

Page 71.—Other adverbs in common use are: á *aye*, *always*, æfre (G. and D. immer) *ever*, næfre (G. and D. nimmer) *never*, ædre *straightway*, recene *instantly*, eft-sona *eft-soon*, forth-with, endemes *at length*, þær-rihte (forð-rihte) *forthwith*, elles *else*, otherwise, elles-hwider *else-whither*, ellor *elsewhere*, þus (D. dus) *thus*, georne (G. gerne) *earnestly*, willingly, þearle *very*, exceedingly, geara *well*, accurately, (lyt-)hwon *a little* (S. *a wheen*), hugu (hwegu), hwæt-(hwylc)-hugu &c. *somewhat*, a little, þances *gratis*, ágnes þances *of one's own accord*, his &c. willan, unwillan *with*, against his &c. will, semninga *suddenly*, hrædinga *quickly*, áninga (æninga) *alone*, only, on bæc-ling *backward*. Sona is construed with a genitive; as, Sona þæs *soon after that*. Sona þæs wintres *early in the winter*.

---

Page 72.—It seems likely that the first part of the word *Oxena-ford* is not from oxa *ox*, but from the Celtic root meaning *water*, *river*, (A. S. *wos* is *ooze*, *liquid*) which appears in Ouse (many) Isis, Ex, Ax, Usk, Esk, Oise, Aisne, Yssel, Oxus, and so many other names of rivers; and this is confirmed by *Ousn-ey* in the neighbourhood. *Ford of oxen* is however the strict meaning of the A. S. name, and doubtless the one then attached to it; Βορ-πορος, Schwein-furt, Swin-ford and the like supply fair analogies.

Ofer- sometimes conveys the same idea as for-; ofer-gitan (= for-gitan) *to forget*. ofer-hycgan = for-hycgan *to despise*.

Of- beside its intensive force (p. 105. n. 2.) sometimes has a bad one; as, me þincð *me thinks*, me of-þincð *it repenteth me*, I take it ill.

Page 73.—Our prefix *a-* has in general sprung from the A. S. *on-* (*an-*, *a-*), and *on* is still sometimes used for it; as, *a-float*, A. S. *on-flote*; *a-live*, A. S. *on-life* (G. *am leben*); *a-two* (*in-two*), A. S. *on-twá*; *a-feared*, A. S. *a-fered*; O. *on flote*, *on life*, *on two*, also *on sleep*, *on row* &c. now *a-sleep* &c.; we yet say *on board*, or *a-board*, *on fire*, or *a-fire* and the like: see also p. 69—71, 73.

In some words *a-* is from A. S. *of-*; as, *of-dúne* (*a-dúne*, *a-dún*) *a-down*, *down* (= G. *berg-ab*); *of-þyrst* *a-thirst*; we say too *of kin* or *a-kin*; it is therefore not unlikely that in other cases A. S. *a-* may, as the sense would imply, have sprung from *of-*; thus *a-faran* *to depart*, *a-wendan* *to turn away*, *a-weorpan* *to cast off*, answer to G. *ab-fahren*, and G. and D. *ab-wenden*, *af-wenden*, *ab-werfen*, *af-werpen*: so *ἀπο*, *ἀπ'* became L. *ab*, and that in time *a*. Once or twice E. *a-* is from A. S. *ge-*; as *ge-líc* (O. *y-like*), *a-like*; *ge-mang* (O. *e-mong*), *a-mong*.

---

Page 77.—Adjectives also take an abl. or dat. of the cause &c., which commonly stands first; as, *Iú-dédum fáh* *stained with (my) former deeds*. *Wundum wérig* *weary with wounds*.

Likewise of the person &c. by whom the action implied is done; as, *His freóndum or-wéne* *despaired of by his friends*. *Wurðfull þám cyningum* *to be honoured by kings*. *Un-a-secgend-líc énigum* *unspeakable by any*.

Adjectives in general govern the object to which they have relation in the dative; as, *Ic eom ge-trýwe mínor hláf-orde* *I am true to my lord*. *He wæs me yrre* *he was angry with me*. *Dryhten wæs þám folce gram* (*the*) *Lord was wroth with the people*.

Adjectives denoting nearness also govern the dative; as, *A'n biscop þe him þá hendest wæs* *a bishop that was then nearest (handiest) to him*.

Some adverbs take the same case as the adjectives whence they are formed: *Nénig him ge-líce þæt dón meahte* *none could do that like him*.

---

Page 79.—The following verbs also govern the dative of the far ob-

ject: *secgan to say, tell, bodian to preach, announce, beóðan to offer, and-wyrdan, and-swarian to answer, gifan to give, for-gifan to give away, forgive, syllan to give, sell* (of which examples need not be given), *wið-metan to compare, measure with, ge-an-lícian to liken, make like; yrsian to be angry with, æt-filhan to approach, apply to, wísian (wissian) to guide, direct, fore-wesan (L. præ-esse) to govern, be over, be-sárgian to pity, be sorry for, have a dative of the near object; losian to be lost, escape from, one of the person affected; as, Hire fær is wið-meten fyrd-lícum truman her going is compared to an army on the march. Ic eom yslum and axum ge-an-lícod I am made like cinders and ashes. Se-þe yrsað his bréðer he that is angry with his brother. Nó ic him þæs georne æt-fealh I did not therefore willingly approach him. Þæt híg minton þám folce wel wissian that they might guide the people well. Mid-þý heó þá feala geara þissum mynstre fore-wæs when she then many years had ruled this convent. Þá be-sárgode he þære sorh-fullan méder then pitied he the sorrowful mother. Him losade án seeáp he had lost one sheep.*

Some of the verbs having a dative &c. of the object to which the action is directed, govern the thing done in the accusative; as, *Démað rihtne dóm judge right judgment.*

---

Page 81.—The following verbs are sometimes used in the usual reflective way with the pronoun in the accusative: *ge-biddan to pray, warnian to be ware, belgan to be angry, ge-wraðian to be wroth; as, Þonne þú þe ge-bidde when thou prayest. Warniað eów fram mannum be ware of men. Warniað wið þa bóceras be ware of the scribes. Þá bealh he hine then was he angry. Ge belgað wið me ye are angry with me. Þá ge-wraðede hine se arce-biscop Landfranc then was the archbishop Lanfranc wroth.*

Likewise some compounds of *seón*; as, *Hine &c. for-seón (G. sich ver-sehen) to err, commit an oversight, sin. Gif he hine under-bæc be-sáwe if he should look back.*

Page 81—3.—Wealdan, on-fón, éhtan, bídan, and earn-ian sometimes govern the accusative.

---

Page 83.—On-þracian *to dread, feel horror at* governs the genitive like on-drædan; as, An-þraciende þæs un-ge-limpes *feeling horror at the misfortune*.

---

Page 87.—Be and tó sometimes govern the ablative; as, Be þý mæg ælc mon wítan *by that may each man know*. Tó-þý-þæt (= tó-þón-þæt) *in order that*. Tó-hwý *why?*

As æt is sometimes *to*, so is tó sometimes *at*; the two are now and then confounded in E., and G. zu stands for both. Tó and æt (the latter in composition often) sometimes mean *from*, the former especially with wilnian and sécan; as, Ealle tó þe ætes wilniað *all from thee desire food*. Manna ge-hwylc se-þe séceð tó him *every man that seeketh from him*. He þæt ful ge-þeah æt Wealh-þeón *he took the cup from (at the hand of) Wealh-theó*.

Tó meaning *motion to*, has sometimes, though seldom, an accusative: He fór tó Samariam þæt land *he went to the land of Samaria*.

---

Page 88.—Tó-emnes (a rare word) rather *by, along-side, over-against* than *along*, is from efen (efn, emn) *even, equal*; on-efn (-emn) is the same; Him on-efn ligeð ealdor-ge-winna *by him lieth (his) deadly foe*. Emn-, em- are common in composition; emn-lang (G. eben (so) lang) *of the same length*; em-leóf (G. eben (so) lieb) *equally dear*; em-þeów *fellow-slave*.

---

Page 90.—Innon, úton, and úppon should not be divided, -on (-an) being here only an ending and not the preposition on, serving in the two last to change the adverb into a preposition.

---

Page 93.—Þenden *while* sometimes has a subjunctive; as, Þenden hit hát sý *while it be hot*.

Page 95.—For-standan (or fore-standan) *to defend, stand before*, likewise for-standan (G. ver-stehen) *to understand* govern the accusative; as, Hine God for-stód him God defended.

---

Page 96.—Other conjunctions are swá-same-swá *the same as—, in like manner as—*, ná-læs þæt án ac— *not (that) only but—*, nates-hwón *by no means*, nóht-þón-læs *never-(nought)-theless*, gea yea, ná nay, gese yes, nese no, næs (nas) not, huru moreover, chiefly, huru-þinga *at least*, þæs-þe *since, after that, because*, for-hwón, tó-hwón (= for-hwý) *hwy*, þæs(-for) *for that, therefore*, gen, gena *yet*.

Comp. οὐκ ἔχομεν εἰ μὴ—we have (not) but—, one only of the many instances of likeness between the Gr. and A. S. syntax.

Weorðe too may be either expressed or understood; as, Wá (weorðe) þám men! *wo worth the man!*

---

Page 97.—Lo! has no more to do with *look* than O. gif has with gifan: our vulgar *law!* and *lawk!* may also be derived from lá!

---

Page 98.—Which Latin translation the A. S. versions of the Holy Scripture are taken from is hard to say; this only is certain that the A. S. Gospels follow the Vulgate more closely than the Heptateuch does. The Latin MSS. doubtless varied much, and the A. S. is now and then seemingly not an accurate rendering of any one. Ælfríc was a common name; among those who bore it, were an Archbishop of Canterbury, and one of York, of whom the latter is believed to have translated the parts of the O. Testament known as the Heptateuch.

---

Page 133.—Teóhhian (from teóh, p. 152. n. 3.) means also *to furnish, provide, fit out*, and perhaps should be so rendered in the extract from Boëthius, where its meaning is not very clear.

---

Page 140.—Tó- in tó-geanes sometimes does not rime (see p. 158, last line) though seemingly always in other combinations: to- on the other hand never rimes.

## CORRECTIONS.

---

- Page 29, *for usser, usse, ussum, usses, ussa read ússer, ússe &c.*
- „ 51, l. 3, *for hó read hange, hó.*
- „ 52, *for geong read geóng.*
- „ 66, l. 12, *for þeow, þeowen read þeów, þeówen, and accent þeów, and its derivatives elsewhere.*
- „ 71, l. 3, *for niwan read níwan, and accent níwe elsewhere.*
- „ do. l. 19, *for fíc-treow read fíc-treów.*
- „ 78, l. 8, *for Oðer-healf read O'ðer-healf.*
- „ 79, l. 3, 4, *for axian read áxian, and accent the verb elsewhere.*
- „ 83, l. 11, *for ehtan read éhtian or éltan, and accent elsewhere.*
- „ 90, *for úpp-on, inn-on, út-on read úppon &c.*
- „ 100, *for aðena, aðenede, aðenian read a-þena, a-þenede, a-þenian.*
- „ 101, *for lociað, locian read lóciað, lócian, and accent elsewhere.*
- „ 102, *for un-fæle, fæle, fæl-s-ian read un-fáele, fáele, fæl-s-ian.*
- „ 103, l. 1, *for ge-drefede read ge-dréfedede.*
- „ 105, l. 14, *for sacerdra read sacerda.*
- „ 109, *last but one, for sód-lice read sóð-lice.*
- „ 115, note 14, *for herd read heed.*
- „ 118, note 2, *for (II. 1.) read (II. 2.)*
- „ 126, note 9, *for for líðan read for-líðan.*
- „ 133, l. 8, *for moton read móton.*
- „ do. *for teohhiað, teohhian read teóhhiað, teóhhian.*
- „ 134, note 1, *for Ut-a-springan read U't-a-springan.*
- „ 138, l. 5, *for boded read bade.*
- „ 143, *for cyððe, cyððu read cýððe, cýððu.*
- „ 168, l. 20, *for birne read byrne (birne).*
- „ 172, l. 4, *for she read the, who.*
- „ 180, l. 23, *for G. ans read Goth. ans.*
- „ 183, l. 14, *for keaven read heáven.*
- „ 188, l. 1, *for imper. fyligde read imperf. fyligde.*



# VALUABLE & INTERESTING BOOKS,

PUBLISHED OR SOLD BY

JOHN RUSSELL SMITH,

4, OLD COMPTON STREET, SOHO SQUARE, LONDON.

## LATIN, ANGLO-SAXON, AND ANGLO-NORMAN LITERATURE.

- 1 **RELIQUIÆ ANTIQUÆ.** Scraps from Ancient Manuscripts, illustrating chiefly Early English Literature, and the English Language, edited by WRIGHT and HALLIWELL, 2 vols. 8vo. *cloth*, £2. 2s—reduced to £1. 4s

Containing communications by Ellis, Madden, Hunter, Bruce, Turnbull, Laing, Nichols, &c. But very few copies remain. Odd numbers may be had to complete sets at 2s. each.

It contains a large number of pieces in Anglo-Saxon, Anglo-Norman, and Early English; it will be found of use to future Philologists, and to all who take an interest in the history of our language and literature.

- 2 **EARLY MYSTERIES;** and other Latin Poems of the XIIth and XIIIth Centuries, edited from original MSS. in the British Museum, and the Libraries of Oxford, Cambridge, Paris, and Vienna, by THOS. WRIGHT, M.A., F.S.A. 8vo. *bds.* 4s 6d

- 3 **LATIN POEMS**, commonly attributed to Walter de Mapes, Archdeacon of Oxford in the XIIIth century, edited by T. WRIGHT, pp. 420, small 4to. *cloth*, 10s 6d

(*Camden Society.*)

The Appendix contains some very curious Translations of the Poems (many now first printed), in Anglo-Norman, French, Scotch, and English, from the 13th to the 16th century.

- 4 **AN ESSAY** on the Origin, Progress, and Decline of Rhyming Latin Verse, with many specimens, by Sir ALEX. CROKE, post 8vo. *cloth*, 7s 6d—reduced to 3s

- 5 **POPULAR TREATISES** on Science, written during the Middle Ages in Anglo-Saxon, Anglo-Norman, and English, 8vo. edited by THOS. WRIGHT, *cloth*, 4s 6d

(*Historical Society of Science*)

*Contents* :—An Anglo-Saxon Treatise on Astronomy of the TENTH CENTURY, now first published from a MS. in the British Museum, with a translation; *Livre des Creatures*, by Phillippe de Thaun; now first printed with a translation, (extremely valuable to the Philologist, as being the earliest specimens of the Anglo-Norman remaining, and explanatory of all the symbolical signs in early sculpture and painting); the *Bestiary* of Phillippe de Thaun, with a translation; Fragment on Popular Science from the Early English Metrical Lives of the Saints, (the earliest piece of the kind in the English Language.)

- 6 **THE Anglo-Saxon Version** of the Holy Gospels, edited by B. THORPE, post 8vo. *cloth*, 9s 6d

- 7 AN INTRODUCTION to Anglo-Saxon Reading: comprising Ælfric's Homily on the Birthday of St. Gregory, with a copious Glossary, &c. by L. LANGLEY, F.L.S., 12mo. *cloth*, 2s 6d
- 8 THE Homilies of Ælfric, with an English Translation by THORPE, 7 parts—Poetry of the Codex Vercellensis, by KEMBLE—Anglo-Saxon Dialogues of Solomon and Saturn, by KEMBLE—altogether 9 parts, 8vo. £2. 10s  
(*Ælfric Society.*)
- 9 COMPENDIOUS Anglo-Saxon and English Dictionary, by the Rev. JOSEPH BOSWORTH, D.D., F.R.S., F.S.A., &c. *in the press*
- 10 ANECDOTA Literaria: a Collection of Short Poems in English, Latin, and French, illustrative of the Literature and History of England in the XIIIth Century; and more especially of the Condition and Manners of the different Classes of Society, by T. WRIGHT, M.A., F.S.A., &c. 8vo. *cloth*, only 250 printed, 7s 6d

### EARLY ENGLISH LITERATURE.

- 11 ESSAYS on Subjects connected with the LITERATURE, POPULAR SUPERSTITIONS, and HISTORY of ENGLAND in the MIDDLE AGES, by THOMAS WRIGHT, M.A., F.S.A., 2 stout vols. post 8vo. *elegantly printed*, *cloth*, 16s  
*Contents:*— Essay I. Anglo-Saxon Poetry. II. Anglo-Norman Poetry. III. Chansons de Geste, or Historical Romances of the Middle Ages. IV. On Proverbs and Popular Sayings. V. On the Anglo-Latin Poets of the Twelfth Century. VI. Abelard and the Scholastic Philosophy. VII. On Dr. Grimm's German Mythology. VIII. On the National Fairy Mythology of England. IX. On the Popular Superstitions of Modern Greece. X. On Friar Rush, and the Frolicsome Elves. XI. On Dunlop's History of Fiction. XII. On the History and Transmission of Popular Stories. XIII. On the Poetry of History. XIV. Adventures of Hereward the Saxon. XV. The Story of Eustace the Monk. XVI. The History of Fulke Fitzwarine. XVII. On the Popular Cycle of Robin-Hood Ballads. XVIII. On the Conquest of Ireland by the Anglo-Normans. XIX. On Old English Political Songs. XX. On the Scottish Poet Dunbar.
- 12 DICTIONARY of Archaic and Provincial Words, Obsolete Phrases, Proverbs, and Ancient Customs, from the XIVth Century, forming a Key to the Writings of our Ancient Poets, Dramatists, and other Authors, whose works abound with allusions of which explanations are not to be found in the ordinary books of reference, by JAMES ORCHARD HALLIWELL, F.R.S., F.S.A., &c. 8vo. Vol. 1. containing 480 pages, *closely printed in double columns*, £1. 1s

"This promises to be a most useful work. Mr. Halliwell is, we must acknowledge, as well qualified, by industry, ability, and previous

study, to be the editor, as any man living. We could indeed easily name a dozen persons, each of whom would be better qualified for particular departments, but not one who, including the whole range embraced by the title, would have the ability and energy to go through all the drudging duties of the office more satisfactorily. It is a work, however, that, in the first instance, must be imperfect. We hold, therefore, that every English scholar should have an interleaved copy, that he may contribute a something towards improving a second edition. The first number appears to have been carefully compiled; but we are not inclined to seek very curiously for faults in a work of such obvious difficulty, when, even if it be imperfect, it cannot fail to be useful."

*Athenæum.*

- 13 POLITICAL Songs of England, from the Reign of King John to that Edward II., edited and translated by T. WRIGHT, small 4to. pp. 426—*cloth*, 8s 6d  
(*Camden Society.*)
- 14 SPECIMENS of Lyric Poetry, of the Reign of Edward I., edited by T. WRIGHT, post 8vo. 4s 6d (*Percy Society.*)
- 15 LIFE and Martyrdom of Thomas Becket, Archbishop of Canterbury, from the Series of Legends by Robert of Gloucester; now first printed and edited by W. H. BLACK, post 8vo. 5s  
(*ib.*)
- 16 ST. BRANDRAN; a Medieval Legend of the Sea, in English Verse and Prose, edited by T. WRIGHT, post 8vo. 3s  
(*ib.*)
- 17 THE Harrowing of Hell, a Miracle Play, written in the Reign of Edward II., now first published from the Original in the British Museum, with a Modern Reading, Introduction, and Notes, by JAMES ORCHARD HALLIWELL, Esq. F.R.S., F.S.A., &c. 8vo. *sewed*, 2s  

This curious piece is supposed to be the earliest specimen of dramatic composition in the English language; *vide* Hallam's Literature of Europe, Vol. I.; Strutt's Manners and Customs, Vol. II.; Warton's English Poetry; Sharon Turner's England; Collier's History of English Dramatic Poetry, Vol. II. p. 213. *All these writers refer to the Manuscript.*
- 18 LUDUS COVENTRIÆ. A Collection of Mysteries formerly represented at Coventry, on the Feast of Corpus Christi, edited, with Notes and Glossary, by J. O. HALLIWELL, thick vol. 8vo. *cloth*, 12s (*Shakespeare Society.*)
- 19 THE CHESTER PLAYS. A Collection of Mysteries founded upon Scriptural Subjects, and formerly represented by the Trades of Chester at Whitsuntide, edited by THOMAS WRIGHT, Vol. I., 8vo. *cloth*, 9s  
(*ib.*)
- 20 OWL and the NIGHTINGALE, a Poem of the 13th Century, attributed to NICHOLAS de GUILDFORD; with some shorter Poems from the same MSS., edited by T. WRIGHT, post 8vo. 2s 6d  
(*Percy Society.*)
- 21 A SELECTION from the Minor Poems of Dan JOHN LYDGATE, edited by J. O. HALLIWELL, post 8vo. pp. 284, 9s  
(*ib.*)

- 22 ALLITERATIVE POEM on the Deposition of King Richard II., *with a Glossary*.—Ric. Maydistone de Concordia inter. Rich. II. et Civitatem, London, edited by T. WRIGHT, small 4to. *cloth*, 9s (Camden Society)

- 23 THE EARLY History of Freemasonry in England, illustrated by an English Poem of the XIVth Century, with Notes, by J. O. HALLIWELL, post 8vo. SECOND EDITION, *with a facsimile of the original MS. in the British Museum*, *cloth*, 2s 6d

"The interest which the curious poem of which this publication is chiefly composed has excited, is proved by the fact of its having been translated into German, and of its having reached a second edition, which is not common with such publications. Mr. Halliwell has carefully revised the new edition, and increased its utility by the addition of a complete and correct glossary."—*Literary Gazette*.

- 24 TORRENT OF PORTUGAL, an English Metrical Romance, *now first published*, from an unique MS. of the XVth century, preserved in the Chetham Library at Manchester, edited by J. O. HALLIWELL, &c. post 8vo. *cloth*, *uniform with Ritson, Weber, and Ellis's publications*, 5s

"This is a valuable and interesting addition to our list of early English metrical romances, and an indispensable companion to the collections of Ritson, Weber, and Ellis."—*Literary Gazette*.

"A literary curiosity, and one both welcome and serviceable to the lover of black-letter lore. Though the obsolescence of the style may occasion sad stumbling to a modern reader, yet the class to which it rightly belongs will value it accordingly; both because it is curious in its details, and possesses philological importance. To the general reader it presents one feature of interest, viz. the reference to Wayland Smith, whom Sir W. Scott has invested with so much interest."

*Metropolitan Magazine*.

- 25 THREE Early English Metrical Romances, (the Anturs of Arthur at the Tarnewathelan; Sir Armadace; and the Avowing of King Arthur, Sir Gawan, Sir Kaye, and Sir Bawdewyn of Bretan,) with Glossary, &c. by J. ROBSON, small 4to. *cloth*, 6s (Camden Society.)

- 26 THE THORNTON ROMANCES. The Early English Metrical Romances of Perceval, Isumbras, Eglamour, and Degrevant, selected from MSS. at Lincoln and Cambridge, by J. O. HALLIWELL, small 4to. pp. 380, *cloth*, 10s (*ib.*)

- 27 ROMANCE of the Emperor Octavian, now first published from MSS. at Lincoln and Cambridge, edited by J. O. HALLIWELL, post 8vo. 2s 6d (Percy Society)

- 28 NUGÆ POETICÆ; Select Pieces of Old English Popular Poetry, illustrating the Manners and Arts of the XVth Century, edited by J. O. HALLIWELL, post 8vo. *only* 100 copies printed, *cloth*, 5s

*Contents*:—Colyn's Blowbol's Testament; the Debate of the Carpenter's Tools; the Merchant and his Son; the Maid and the Magpie; Elegy on Lobe, Henry VIIIth's Fool; Romance of Robert of Sicily, and five other curious pieces of the same kind.

- 29 ROMANCE of Syr Tryamour, from a MS. at Cambridge, edited by J. O. HALLIWELL, post 8vo. 2s 6d  
(Percy Society.)
- 30 THE "BOKE OF CURTASYE;" an English Poem illustrative of the Domestic Manners of our forefathers, edited, from a MS. of the fifteenth century in the British Museum, by J. O. HALLIWELL, post 8vo. 2s 6d (ib.)
- 31 THE NURSERY RHYMES of England, collected chiefly from Oral Tradition, edited by J. O. HALLIWELL, the 4th edition, enlarged, with 38 Designs by W. B. SCOTT, *Director of the School of Design, Newcastle-on-Tyne*, 12mo. in very rich illuminated cloth, gilt leaves, 4s 6d
- "Illustrations! And here they are; clever pictures, which the three-year olds understand before their A, B, C, and which the fifty-three year olds like almost as well as the threes."—*Literary Gazette*.
- "We are persuaded that the very rudest of these jingles, tales, and rhymes, possess a strong imagination-nourishing power; and that in infancy and early childhood a sprinkling of ancient nursery lore is worth whole cartloads of the wise saws and modern instances which are now as duly and carefully concocted by experienced literateurs, into instructive tales for the *spelling* public, as are works of entertainment for the reading public. The work is worthy of the attention of the popular antiquary."—*Tait's Mag.*
- The public are cautioned against other works with imitative titles, which have been published since the second edition of the above, and which are mostly *pirated* from it. Mr. Halliwell's is the largest collection of these old ditties ever formed, with explanatory notes, &c. &c.
- 32 AN ESSAY on the Archæology of our Popular Phrases and Nursery Rhymes, by H. B. KER, 2 vols. 12mo. *new, cloth, 4s* (pub. at 12s)
- A work which has met with great abuse among the reviewers, but those who are fond of philological pursuits will read it now it is to be had at so very moderate a price, and it really contains a good deal of gossiping matter. The author's attempt is to explain everything from the Dutch, which he believes was the same language as the Anglo-Saxon.
- 33 POEMS of John Audelay, a Specimen of the Shropshire Dialect in the XVth Century, edited by J. O. HALLIWELL, post 8vo. 3s 6d (Percy Soc.)
- 34 A PARAPHRASE on the Seven Penitential Psalms, in English Verse, by THOMAS BRAMPTON, 1414, together with the Psalter of St. Bernard, edited by W. H. BLACK, post 8vo. 4s 6d (ib.)
- 35 APOLOGY for Lollard Doctrines, attributed to Wicliffe, now first printed, and edited by Dr. J. H. TODD, small 4to. pp. 269, *cloth, 7s 6d* (Camden Soc.)
- 36 SPECIMENS of Old Christmas Carols, chiefly taken from MSS. sources, edited by T. WRIGHT, post 8vo. 3s (Percy Soc.)

- 37 CHRISTMAS CAROLS, Ancient and Modern, including the most popular in the West of England, with Specimens of French Carols, with Notes, &c. by W. SANDYS, post 8vo. *cloth*, reduced from 12s to 8s 6d
- 38 COCK LORRELL'S BOTE, a Satyrical Poem, from an unique copy, printed by WYNKYN de WORDE, edited by E. F. RIMBAULT, post 8vo. 2s (*Percy Soc.*)
- 39 THE PAYNE and Sorowe of evyll Maryage, from a copy believed to be unique, printed by Wynkyn de Worde; with an Introduction regarding other works of the same class, and from the same press, by J. P. COLLIER, post 8vo. 2s 6d (*ib.*)
- 40 RARA MATHEMATICA; or a Collection of Treatises on the Mathematics and Subjects connected with them, from ancient inedited MSS., by J. O. HALLIWELL, 8vo. 2nd edition, *cloth*, 3s 6d
- Contents* :—Johannis de Sacro-Bosco Tractatus de Arte Numerandi; Method used in England in the Fifteenth Century for taking the Altitude of a Steeple; Treatise on the Numeration of Algorism; Treatise on Glasses for Optical Purposes, by W. Bourne; Johannis Robyns de Cometis Commentaria; Two Tables showing the time of High Water at London Bridae, and the Duration of Moonlight, from a MSS. of the Thirteenth Century; on the Mensuration of Heights and Distances; Alexandri de Villa Dei Carmen de Algorismo; Preface to a Calendar or Almanack for 1430; Johannis Norfolk in Artem progressionis summula; Notes on Almanacs, by the Editor, &c. &c.
- 41 KYNG JOHAN, a Play by JOHN BALE, (*now first printed*), edited by J. P. COLLIER, small 4to. *cloth*, 9s (*Camden Soc.*)
- 42 THIRTEEN PSALMS, and the First Chapter of Ecclesiastes, translated into English Verse by JOHN CROKE, temp. Henry VIII., with Documents relative to the Croke Family, edited by Dr. BLISS, post 8vo. 2s 6d (*Percy Soc.*)
- 43 THE HARMONY or BIRDS, a Poem, from the only known copy printed in the middle of the sixteenth Century, with Introduction, by J. P. COLLIER, post 8vo. 2s (*ib.*)
- 44 HAWES' (Stephen) Pastime of Pleasure, an Allegorical Poem, reprinted from the edition of 1555, post 8vo. 6s 6d (*ib.*)
- One of the most remarkable productions between the age of Lydgate and that of Wyatt and Surrey, and one of the links in the History of English Poetry. The old editions are excessively rare.
- 45 FIVE POETICAL TRACTS of the Sixteenth Century, from unique copies, *viz.*—"The Doctrynnall of Good Servauntes." "The Boke of Mayd Emlyn." "The New Notbroune Mayd." "A Complaint of a Dolorous Lover upon Sugred Wordes and Fayned Countenance." And "Loves Leprosie." Edited by E. F. RIMBAULT, post 8vo. 3s 6d (*Percy Soc.*)

- 46 KIND-HART'S DREAM, containing Five Apparitions, with their Invectives against abuses raining, by HENRY CHETTLE, containing Notices of Shakspeare, Nash, &c., a curious picture of the Manners and Customs of the times, with a Life of the Author, edited by E. F. RIMBAULT, post 8vo. 4s (Percy Soc.)
- 47 THE PLEASANT and Sweet History of Patient Grissell, in *prose and verse*, with an Introduction concerning the origin of the story, and its application in various countries, edited by J. P. COLLIER, post 8vo. 3s (ib.)
- 48 PATIENT GRISEL, a Comedy by DEKKER, CHETTLE, and HAUGHTON, with Introduction by J. P. COLLIER, 8vo. 5s (Shakespeare Soc.)
- 49 HISTORICALL Expostulation against the beastlye Abusers both of Chyrurgerie and Physyke in oure Time, by JOHN HALLE, (*with portrait*) 1565, edited by T. J. PETTIGREW, post 8vo. 2s 6d (Percy Soc.)
- 50 NORTHBROOKE'S Treatise against Dice, Dancing, Plays, Interludes, and other IDLE PASTIMES, 1577, edited by J. P. COLLIER, 8vo. cloth, 4s 6d (Shakespeare Soc.)
- 51 THE SCHOOL OF ABUSE, containing a pleasant In-  
vective against Poets, Pipers, Players, &c. by STEPHEN  
GOSSON, 1579—HEYWOOD'S (THOMAS) Apology for  
Actors, 1612, reprinted in 1 vol. 8vo. cloth, 5s (ib.)
- 52 MAROCCUS EXTATICUS; or Bankes's Bay Horse in a  
Trance, anatomizing some abuses and bad tricks of this age  
(1595), edited by E. F. RIMBAULT, post 8vo. 1s 6d  
(Percy Soc.)
- 53 A DEBATE between Pride and Lowliness; by FRANCIS  
THYNNE, edited by J. P. COLLIER, 8vo. cloth, 4s 6d  
(Shakespeare Soc.)
- 54 SIR THOMAS MORE, a Play (about 1590) now first  
printed, edited by the Rev. A. DYCE, 8vo. cloth, 4s 6d  
(ib.)
- 55 THE HARMONY of the Church, Spiritual Songs and  
Holy Hymns, by MICHAEL DRAYTON, reprinted from the  
edition of 1591, (and not in his collected works.) Edited  
by the Rev. A. DYCE, post 8vo. 3s (Percy Soc.)
- 56 PLEASANT History of the Two Angry Women of Abing-  
don, with the Humorous Mirth of Dick Coomes and Nicho-  
las Proverbs, a Play by HENRY PORTER, 1599, edited by  
the Rev. A. DYCE, post 8vo. 4s (ib.)
- 57 PIERCE PENNILESS'S Supplication to the Devil, by  
THOMAS NASH, 1592, with Introduction and Notes by  
J. P. COLLIER, 8vo. cloth, 4s (Shakespeare Soc.)
- 58 THE Old Play of Timon of Athens, which preceded that of  
Shakspeare, now first printed from a MS., edited by the  
Rev. A. DYCE, 8vo. cloth, 3s 6d (ib.)

- 59 THE Old Taming of A Shrew, 1594, upon which Shakespeare founded his Comedy; to which is added the WOMAN LAPPED IN MORREL SKIN, edited by T. AMYOT, 8vo. cloth, 4s 6d (Shakespeare Soc.)
- 60 THE First Sketches of the Second and Third Parts of King Henry the Sixth, with Introduction and Notes by J. O. HALLIWELL, 8vo. cloth, 5s (ib.)
- The possessor of this volume will have the two Plays upon which Shakespeare founded his Second and Third Parts of Henry VI., both printed from *unique* copies in the Bodleian—one a small octavo, [which cost at Chalmers's sale, £130; the other a very thin small quarto, which cost £64. several years ago, and would now probably realize more than twice that sum.
- 61 SHAKESPEARE'S Play of King Kenry IV., printed from a Contemporary Manuscript, edited by J. O. HALLIWELL, 8vo. cloth, 4s 6d (Shakespeare Society.)
- 62 TRUE Tragedy of Richard III., to which is appended the Latin Play of Richardus Tertius, by Dr. THOMAS LEGGE, both anterior to Shakespeare's Drama, with Notes by BARON FIELD, 8vo. cloth, 4s (ib.)
- 63 THE Ghost of Richard III., a Poem, 1614, founded upon Shakespeare's Historical Play, reprinted from the only known copy, edited by J. P. COLLIER, 8vo. cloth, 3s 6d (ib.)
- 64 HEYWOOD'S (Thomas) First and Second Parts of King Edward IV., with Notes by BARRON FIELD. 8vo. cloth, 4s 6d (ib.)
- 65 LYRICAL Poems, selected from Musical Publications, between 1589 and 1600, edited by J. P. COLLIER, post 8vo. 3s 6d (Percy Soc.)
- 66 HONOUR Triumphant: and a Line of Life, two Tracts by JOHN FORDE, the Dramatist, recently discovered, edited by J. P. COLLIER, 8vo. cloth, 3s (Shakespeare Soc.)
- 67 SIX Ballads with Burdens, from a MS. at Cambridge, about the end of Elizabeth's Reign, edited by J. GOODWIN, post 8vo. 1s 6d (Percy Soc.)
- 68 POETICAL Miscellanies, from a MS. of the time of James I., edited by J. O. HALLIWELL, post 8vo. 2s (ib.)
- 69 A MARRIAGE Triumph; Solemnized in an Epithalamium in Memorie of the Happie Nuptials betwixt the Count Palatine and the Lady Elizabeth, written by THOMAS HEYWOOD, in verse, 1613; with an Introduction, giving an account of other Poems by different Authors on the same event, by J. P. COLLIER, post 8vo. 2s 6d (ib.)
- 70 THE AFFECTIONATE Shepherd, by RICHARD BARNEFIELD, A.D. 1594, edited by J. O. HALLIWELL, post 8vo. 3s (ib.)
- 71 POEMS, by Sir HENRY WOTTON, edited by the Rev. A. DYCE, post 8vo. 1s 6d (ib.)

- 72 OLD BALLADS of the utmost rarity, now first collected and edited by J. P. COLLIER, post 8vo. 5s (*Percy Soc.*)
- 73 EARLY Naval Ballads of England, collected and edited by J. O. HALLIWELL, post 8vo. 4s (*ib.*)
- 74 SCOTTISH Traditional Verses of Ancient Ballads, edited by J. H. DIXON, post 8vo. 4s 6d (*ib.*)
- 75 ANCIENT Traditional Ballads and Songs of the Peasantry of England, collected and edited by J. H. DIXON, post 8vo. 6s (*ib.*)
- 76 THE MEETING of Gallants at an Ordinarie; of the Walkes in Powles, 1604, illustrative of the Manners and Customs of the Time, edited by J. O. HALLIWELL, post 8vo. 3s (*ib.*)
- 77 FRIAR BAKON'S Prophesie; a Satire on the Degeneracy of the Time, A.D. 1604, edited by J. O. HALLIWELL, post 8vo. 1s 6d (*ib.*)
- 78 STRANGE Histories, or Songes and Sonets of Kings, Princes, Dukes, Lordes, Ladyes, Knights, and Gentlemen; very pleasant either to be "Read or Songe," &c. by THOMAS DELONEY, 1607, edited by J. P. COLLIER, post 8vo. 4s (*ib.*)
- 79 A KNIGHT'S Conjuring, done in Earnest, discovered in Jest; written in answer to Nash's 'Pierce Penniless,' and containing numerous allusions to Manners and Customs in London, by THOMAS DEKKER, 1607, edited, with a Life of the Author, by E. F. RIMBAULT, post 8vo. 3s 6d (*ib.*)
- 80 THE FOUR KNAVES; a Series of Satirical Tracts, by SAMUEL ROWLANDS, 1611-13, edited, with Introduction and Notes, by E. F. RIMBAULT, wood-cuts, post 8vo. 4s 6d (*ib.*)
- 81 A SEARCH for Money; or the Lamentable Complaint for the Losse of the Wandring Knight Monsieur l'Argent; or Come along with me, I know thou Lovest Money, &c. by WILLIAM ROWLEY, 1609, reprinted from the only known copy by J. P. COLLIER, post 8vo. 2s 6d (*ib.*)
- 82 THE CROWNE-GARLAND of Goulden Roses; a Collection of Songs and Ballads, chiefly Historical, by RICHARD JOHNSON, Author of "The Seven Champions of Christendom," reprinted from the edition of 1612, edited by W. CHAPPELL, Part I. 3s—Part II. from the edition of 1659, 3s 6d, post 8vo. (*ib.*)
- 83 HONESTIE of this Age; proving by Good Circumstance that the World was never Honest till now, by BARNABY RICH, 1614, edited by P. CUNNINGHAM, post 8vo. 3s (*ib.*)
- 84 FOLLIE'S ANATOMIE; or Satyres and Satiricall Epigrams, by HENRY HUTTON, of Durham, 1619; containing curious Allusions to Paris Garden, the Theatres, &c. edited by E. F. RIMBAULT, post 8vo. 3s (*ib.*)

- 85 THE KING and the Poore Northerne Man; shewing how a poore Northumberland Man, &c. went to the King himself to make known his Grievances; full of simple Mirth and merry plaine Jestes, by MARTIN PARKER, 1640, edited by J. P. COLLIER, post 8vo. 2s (*Percy Soc.*)
- 86 A ROT among the Bishops; or a Terrible *Tempest* in the Sea of Canterbury, set forth in lively emblems to please the judicious Reader, in Verse, by THOMAS STIRRY, 1641, 18mo. (*a satire on Abp. Laud*) four very curious wood-cut emblems, cloth, 3s  
A facsimile of the very rare original edition, which sold at Bindley's sale for £13.
- 87 SONGS of the London Prentices and Trades during the Reigns of Henry VII., Henry VIII., Elizabeth, and James I., edited by C. MACKAY, post 8vo. 5s (*Percy Soc.*)
- 88 LORD MAYOR'S PAGEANTS; being Collections towards a History of these Annual Celebrations, with Specimens of the descriptive Pamphlets published by the City Poets, edited by W. F. FAIRHOLT, in two parts: Part I. *wood-cuts*, 5s: Part II. *plates*, 5s (*ib.*)
- 89 CIVIC GARLAND; a Collection of Songs from London Pageants, editen by F. W. FAIRHOLT, post 8vo. 4s (*ib.*)
- 90 POLITICAL BALLADS Published in England during the Commonwealth, chiefly from the King's Pamphlets in the British Museum, with an Introduction and Notes, by T. WRIGHT, post 8vo. 6s (*ib.*)
- 91 OLD BALLADS; illustrating the great Frost of 1683-4, and the Fair on the River Thames, edited by E. F. RIMBAULT, post 8vo. 3s (*ib.*)

---

### POPULAR STORIES AND SUPERSTITIONS.

- 92 SAINT PATRICK'S PURGATORY; an Essay on the Legends of Purgatory, Hell, and Paradise, current during the Middle Ages, by THOMAS WRIGHT, M.A., F.S.A., &c., post 8vo. *cloth*, 6s

"It must be observed, that this is not a mere account of St. Patrick's Purgatory, but a complete history of the legends and superstitions relating to the subject, from the earliest times, rescued from old MSS. as well as from old printed books. Moreover, it embraces a singular chapter of literary history, omitted by Warton and all former writers with whom we are acquainted; and we think we may add, that it forms the best introduction to Dante that has yet been published."

*Literary Gazette.*

"This appears to be a curious and even amusing book on the singular subject of Purgatory, in which the idle and fearful dreams of superstition are shown to be first narrated as tales, and then applied as means of deducing the moral character of the age in which they prevailed."—*Spectator.*

- 93 THE MERRY TALES of the Wise Men of Gotham, edited by JAMES ORCHARD HALLIWELL, Esq. F.S.A., post 8vo. 1s

These tales are supposed to have been composed in the early part of the sixteenth century, by Dr. Andrew Borde, the well-known progenitor of Merry Andrews. "In the time of Henry the Eighth, and after," says Ant.-à-Wood, "it was accounted a book full of wit and mirth by scholars and gentlemen."

- 94 A SELECTION of Latin Stories from MSS. of the XIIIth and XIVth Centuries, edited by T. WRIGHT, post 8vo. pp. 280, 6s (Percy Soc.)

- 95 THE SEVEN SAGES, in English Verse, from a MS. at Cambridge, edited by T. WRIGHT, post 8vo. 4s (ib.)  
One of the most remarkable collections of Stories current during the Middle Ages.

- 96 JACK OF DOVER, his Quest of Inquirie, or his Privy Search for the veriest Foole in England, a collection of Merry Tales, 1604, edited by T. WRIGHT, post 8vo. 2s 6d (Percy Soc.)

This tract is exceedingly curious, as forming one of the links between the wit of the middle ages and that of modern times. There is scarcely one of the "merry tales" contained in it which has not its counterpart among the numerous Latin stories of the monks, which were popular in the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries.

- 97 PLEASANT Conceites of Old Hobson, the Merry Londoner, full of humourous Discourses and witty Merriments, whereat the quickest wittes may laugh, and the wiser sort take pleasure, 1607, edited by J. O. HALLIWELL, post 8vo. 2s (Percy Soc.)

- 98 ROBIN GOODFELLOW; his Mad Pranks and Merry Jests, full of honest mirth, 1628, edited by J. P. COLLIER, post 8vo. 2s (ib.)

- 99 HISTORY of Reynard the Fox, from Caxton's edition in 1481, with Notes and Literary History of the Romance, edited by W. J. THOMS, post 8vo. 9s (ib.)

- 100 FOOLS AND JESTERS, with a Reprint of ROBERT ARMIN's Nest of Ninnies, 1608, edited by J. P. COLLIER, 8vo. cloth, 4s 6d (Shakespeare Soc.)

- 101 TARLTON'S JESTS, and News out of Purgatory; with Notes, and some account of the Life of Tarlton, by J. O. HALLIWELL, 8vo. cloth, 4s 6d (ib.)

- 102 ILLUSTRATIONS of the Fairy Mythology of Shakespeare, by J. O. HALLIWELL, thick 8vo. cloth, 7s 6d (ib.)

- 103 THE NOBLE and Renowned History of Guy, Earl of Warwick, containing a full and true uccount of his many famous and valiant actions, 12mo. new edition, with woodcuts, cloth, 2s 6d

- 104 ANECDOTES and Traditions, illustrative of Early English History and Literature, desived from MS. sources, edited by W. J. THOMS, small 4to. cloth, 15s (Camden Soc.)

- 105 **A CONTEMPORARY** Narrative of the Proceedings against Dame Alice Kyteler, prosecuted for Sorcery in 1324, by RICHARD de LEDREDE, Bishop of OSSORY, edited by T. WRIGHT, small 4to. *cloth*, 4s 6d (Camden Soc.)  
This volume affords a curious picture of the turbulent state of Ireland in the reign of Edward II., and an interesting chapter in the history of English Superstition.
- 106 **DIALOGUE** concerning Witches and Witchcrafts, by GEORGE GIFFORD, Vicar of Maldon, 1603. Edited by T. WRIGHT, post 8vo. 4s 6d (Percy Soc.)  
This dialogue was thought to merit reprinting, both as being an excellent specimen of the colloquial language of the Reign of Elizabeth, and for the good sense with which the writer treats a subject on which so many people ran mad, and the curious allusions which it contains to the superstitions of the age.
- 107 **TRIAL** of the Witches at Bury St Edmunds, before Sir M. HALE, 1604, with an Appendix by CHARLES CLARK, Esq. of Totham, Essex, 8vo. 1s  
"The most perfect narrative of anything of this nature hitherto extant."—*Preface*.
- 108 **WONDERFUL** Discovery of the Witchcrafts of Margaret and Philip Flower, daughters of Joan Flower, near Bever (Belvoir), executed at Lincoln for confessing themselves actors in the destruction of Lord Rosse, son of the Earl of Rutland, 1618, 8vo. 1s  
One of the most extraordinary cases of Witchcraft on record.
- 109 **ACCOUNT** of the Trial, Confession, and Condemnation of Six Witches at Maidstone, 1652; also the Trial and Execution of Three others at Faversham, 1645, 8vo. 1s  
These transactions are unnoticed by all the Kentish historians.
- 110 **A FAITHFUL RECORD** of the Miraculous Case of Mary Johnson, by W. REID CLANNY, M.D. of Sunderland, 8vo. 1s 6d  
The second edition of a most extraordinary narrative, which caused great sensation in the North of England.

---

### MEDIEVAL HISTORY.

- 111 **A MANUAL** of the History of the Middle Ages, from the Invasion of the Barbarians to the Fall of Constantinople; with Genealogical Tables of the Imperial Houses of Germany, of the Three French Dynasties, and of the Norman-Angevin Kings of England, translated from the French Work of DES MICHELS, by T. G. JONES, 12mo. *cloth*, 2s 6d (pub. at 6s 6d)  
"The general scarcity of elementary works on History, and more especially of such as refer to the Middle Ages, might, in itself, be a sufficient apology for the appearance of the following translation; but when it is further considered that the original text has passed through several editions, and that its reputation is established in a country confessedly eminent in historical literature, it is believed that the work, in its present form, cannot but prove a desideratum to the English student."

- 112 **CHRONICA** Jocelina de Brakelonda, de Rebus Gestis Samsonis Abbatis Monasterii Sancti Edmundi : nunc primum typis mandata curante J. GAGE-ROKEWODE, small 4to. cloth, 10s 6d (Camden Soc.)

"There is one publication which the Society may well be gratified at having been the means of adding to the materials of the History of England, the Chronicle of Josceline de Brakelond, a work edited with singular care and judgment, and unique in its character, as affording an illustration of monastic life more vivid and complete than can be found in any work with which the Council are acquainted."

*Report of the C. S. 1841.*

- 113 **ECCLESIASTICAL DOCUMENTS**: viz.—1. A Brief History of the Bishoprick of Somerset to the year 1174. 2. Curious Collection of Charters from the Library of Dr. Cox. Macro, now first published, by the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER, small 4to. cloth, 3s (Camden Soc.)
- 114 **CHRONICLE** of William of Rishanger of the Barons' Wars—The Miracles of Simon de Montfort, edited from MSS. by J. O. HALLIWELL, small 4to. cloth, 5s (ib.)
- 115 **THE BARONS' WAR**, including the Battles of Lewes and Evesham, by W. H. BLAAW, F.S.A., thick small 4to, many plates, cloth, (an interesting volume,) 15s
- 116 **A FRENCH Chronicle** of London, from the 44th of Henry III. to the 17th of Edw. III., with copious English notes, by J. G. AUNGIER, small 4to. cloth, 6s (Camden Soc.)
- 117 **ABBREVIATA CHRONICA**, ab anno 1377, usque ad annum 1469. Edited by the Rev. J. SMITH, 4to. fac-simile, 3s (Camb. Antiq. Soc.)
- 118 **HISTORIE** of the Arrival of Edward IV. in England, and the final recoverye of his Kingdoms from Henry VI. 1471. Edited by J. BRUCE, small 4to. cloth, 9s (Camden Soc.)
- 119 **CHRONICLE** of the First Thirteen Years of the Reign of Edward IV., by JOHN WARKWORTH, now first printed, and edited by J. O. HALLIWELL, small 4to. cloth, 3s (ib.)
- 120 **POLYDORE VIRGIL'S History** of the Reigns of Henry VI., Edward IV., and Richard III., now first printed in English from a MS. in the British Museum, by Sir H. ELLIS, small 4to. cloth, 6s 6d (ib.)

---

#### PHILOLOGY.

- 121 **DICTIONARY** of Archaic and Provincial Words, Obsolete Phrases, &c. from the Reign of Edward I.; forming a complete Key for the reader of the works of our Ancient Poets, Dramatists, and other Authors, whose works abound with allusions of which explanations are not

to be found in ordinary dictionaries and books of reference, by J. O. HALLIWELL, F.R.S., &c. 8vo. Vol. I. containing 480 pages, closely printed in double columns, *cloth*, £1. 1s  
(*To be completed in 2 vols.*)

"It forms a most comprehensive glossary to all our old English writers, from the beginning of the fourteenth century to the time of the Stuarts, including the earlier chroniclers, the writings of Wycliffe, and a long range of poets, from Piers Ploughman, Chaucer, Gower, Lydgate, &c. to Spenser and his contemporaries, with Shakespeare and the dramatists of that age. Most of the words of the Dictionary are illustrated by examples, selected not only from printed authorities, but from the numerous early English MSS. scattered through public and private libraries, and these are extremely numerous and valuable. In addition to the obsolete portion of our language, this work may be said to be a complete dictionary of the local dialects of the present day, and is one which will be an acceptable addition to every library."

*Morning Herald.*

- 122 ON THE Origin and Formation of the Romance Languages ; containing an examination of M. Raynouard's Theory on the Relation of the Italian, Spanish, Provençal, and French, to the Latin, by GEO. CORNEWALL LEWIS, 8vo. *cloth*, 12s  
*reduced to 7s 6d*
- 123 RELIQUES of Irish Jacobite Poetry, with Interlinear Translations, and Biographical Sketches of the Authors, and Notes by J. DALY ; also English Metrical Versions by E. WALSH, 8vo. Parts 1 and 2 (all yet published), 2s
- 124 POPULAR ERRORS in English Grammar, particularly pointed out, by GEORGE JACKSON, 12mo. third edition, with a coloured frontispiece of the "*Sedes Busbeiana*"  
6d
- 125 PROMPTORIUM Parvulorum sive Clericorum, Lexicon Anglo-Latinum princeps, autore Fratre Galfrido Grammatico Dicto e Predicationibus Lenne Episcopi, Northfolciensi, A.D. 1440, olim e prelis Pynsonianis editum, nunc ab integro, commentariolis subjectis, ad fidem codicum recensuit ALBERTUS WAY, tomus prior, small 4to. *cloth*, 10s 6d  
(*Camden Soc.*)
- 126 HISTOIRE Litteraire, Philologique et Bibliographique des Patois, par PIERQUIN de GEMBLoux, 8vo. *Paris*, 1841, 8s 6d
- 127 GROSE'S (Francis, F.S.A.) Glossary of Provincial and Local Words used in England, with which is now first incorporated the SUPPLEMENT by SAMUEL PEGGE, F.S.A., post 8vo. *elegantly printed, cloth*, 4s 6d

The utility of a Provincial Glossary to all persons desirous of understanding our ancient poets is so universally acknowledged, that to enter into a proof of it would be entirely a work of supererogation. Grose and Pegge are constantly referred to in Todd's "*Johnson's Dictionary*."

- 128 BIBLIOGRAPHICAL List of all the Works which have been published towards illustrating the Provincial Dialects of England, by JOHN RUSSELL SMITH, post 8vo. 1s

"Very serviceable to such as prosecute the study of our provincial dialects, or are collecting works on that curious subject. We very cordially recommend it to notice."—*Metropolitan*.

- 129 SPECIMENS of Cornish Provincial Dialect, collected and arranged by Uncle Jan Treenoodle, with some Introductory Remarks and a Glossary by an Antiquarian Friend, also a Selection of Songs and other Pieces connected with Cornwall, post 8vo. *with curious portrait of Dolly Pentreath, cloth, 4s*

"Vether it's worth while goin' through so much, to learn so little, as the Charity-boy said ven he got to the end of the alphabet, is a matter o' taste. I rather think it isn't," *Quoth Old Weller*.

- 130 EXMOOR Scolding and Courtship in the Propriety and Decency of Exmoor (Devonshire) Language, *with Notes and a Glossary*, post 8vo. 12th edition, 1s 6d

"A very rich bit of West of Englandism."—*Metropolitan*.

- 131 POEMS of Rural Life, in the Dorset Dialect, with a Dissertation and Glossary, by WILLIAM BARNES, royal 12mo. *cloth, 10s*

A fine poetic feeling is displayed through the various pieces in this volume; according to some critics nothing has appeared equal to it since the time of Burns; the 'Gent.'s Magazine' for Dec. 1844, gave a review of the volume some pages in length.

- 132 A GLOSSARY of Provincial Words and Phrases in use in Wiltshire, showing their Derivation in numerous instances from the Language of the Anglo-Saxons, by JOHN YONGE AKERMAN, Esq., F.S.A. 12mo. *cloth, 3s*

- 133 A COLLECTION of Fugitive Pieces in the Dialect of Summerzet, edited by J. O. HALLIWELL, post 8vo. *only 50 printed, 2s*

- 134 DICK and SAL, or Jack and Joan's Fair, a Doggerel Poem, in the Kentish Dialect, 3d edition, 12mo. 6d

- 135 TOM CLADPOLE'S Journey to Lunnun, told by himself, and written in pure SUSSEX Doggerel, by his Uncle Tim, 12mo. *5th thousand, 6d*

- 136 JAN CLADPOLE'S Trip to 'Merrricur in Search for Dollar Trees, and how he got rich enough to beg his way home! written in Sussex Doggerel, 12mo. 6d

- 137 JOHN NOAKES and Mary Styles, a Poem, *exhibiting some of the most striking lingual localisms peculiar to Essex*, with a Glossary, by CHARLES CLARK, Esq. of Great Totnam Hall, Essex, post 8vo. *cloth, 2s*

"The poem possesses considerable humour." *Tait's Mag.*—"A very pleasant trifle." *Lit. Gaz.*—"A very clever production." *Essex Lit. Journal.*—"Full of rich humour." *Essex Mercury.*—"Very droll." *Metropolitan.*—"Exhibits the dialect of Essex perfectly." *Eclectic Review.*—"Full of quaint wit and humour." *Gent.'s Mag. May, 1841.*—"A very clever and amusing piece of local description." *Archæologist.*

- 138 THE VOCABULARY of East Anglia, an attempt to record the vulgar tongue of the twin sister Counties, *Norfolk* and *Suffolk*, as it existed in the last twenty years of the Eighteenth Century, and still exists; with proof of its antiquity from Etymology and Authority, by the Rev. R. FORBY, 2 vols. post 8vo. *cloth*, 12s (original price £1. 1s)

- 139 WESTMORLAND AND CUMBERLAND DIALECTS. Dialogues, Poems, Songs, and Ballads, by various Writers, in the Westmorland and Cumberland Dialects, now first collected, to which is added, a Copious Glossary of Words peculiar to those Counties, post 8vo. pp. 408, *cloth*, 9s

This collection comprises, in the *Westmorland Dialect*, Mrs. ANN WHEELER'S Four Familiar Dialogues, with Poems, &c.; and in the *Cumberland Dialect*, I. Poems and Pastorals by Rev. JOSIAH RELPH; II. Pastorals, &c., by EWAN CLARK; III. Letter from Dublin by a young Borrowdale Shepherd, by ISAAC RITSON; IV. Poems by JOHN STAGG; V. Poems by MARK LONSDALE; VI. Ballads and Songs by ROBERT ANDERSON, the Cumbrian Bard (*including some now first printed*); VII. Songs by Miss BLAMIRE and Miss GILPIN; VIII. Songs by JOHN RAYSON; IX. An extensive Glossary of Westmorland and Cumberland Words.

"Among the specimens of Cumberland Verse will be found some true poetry, if not the best ever written in the language of rural life this side the Scotch Borders. The writers seem to have caught in their happiest hours inspiration from the rapt soul of Burns. Anderson's touching song of wedded love, 'The Days that are geane,' is a worthy answer for a husband to Burns' 'John Anderson my Jo.'"

*Gent.'s Mag.*

"No other two counties in England have so many pieces, both in prose and verse, illustrative of the manners and customs of the inhabitants, and written in their own native dialect. The philologist will find numerous examples of words and phrases which are obsolete in the general language of England, or which have been peculiar to Westmorland and Cumberland from time immemorial. Nor are the pieces uninteresting in other respects. Some of the *patois* verses are rich in the true spirit and vigour of poetry."—*Metropolitan*.

"A charming volume: it contains some beautiful poetical effusions, as well as characteristic sketches in prose."—*Archæologist*.

- 140 THE YORKSHIRE DIALECT, exemplified in various Dialogues, Tales and Songs, applicable to the County, with a Glossary, post 8vo. 1s

"A shilling book worth its money; most of the pieces of composition are not only harmless, but good and pretty. The eclogue on the death of 'Awd Daisy,' an outworn horse, is an outpouring of some of the best feelings of the rustic mind; and the addresses to riches and poverty have much of the freedom and spirit of Burns."

*Gent.'s Magazine*, May, 1841.

- 141 THE BAIRNSLA FOAK'S ANNUAL, an onny body els as beside for't years 1840 and 1843, be TOM TREDDLE-HOYLE; to which is added the Barnsley and Village Record, or the Book of Facts and Fancies, by NED NUT, 12mo. pp. 100, 1s

This almanac is written in the Barnsley Dialect, and therefore fits itself with peculiar emphasis to the understanding of all in that particular locality. Its influence, however, extends beyond this; for even those acquainted with the Barnsley peculiarities of speech, will find much amusement in perusing the witticisms of the author, through his curious mode of expression.

## HERALDRY AND GENEALOGY.

- 142 THE CURIOSITIES of Heraldry, with Illustrations from Old English Writers, by MARK ANTONY LOWER, Author of "Essays on English Surnames;" *with illuminated Title-page, and numerous Engravings from designs by the Author*, 8vo. cloth, GULES, appropriately ornamented OR, 14s

"The present volume is truly a worthy sequel (to the 'SURNAMEs') in the same curious and antiquarian line, blending with remarkable facts and intelligence, such a fund of amusing anecdote and illustration, that the reader is almost surprised to find that he has learnt so much, whilst he appeared to be pursuing mere entertainment. The text is so pleasing that we scarcely dream of its sterling value; and it seems as if, in unison with the woodcuts, which so cleverly explain its points and adorn its various topics, the whole design were intended for a relaxation from study, rather than an ample exposition of an extraordinary and universal custom, which produced the most important effect upon the minds and habits of mankind."—*Literary Gazette*.

- 143 ENGLISH SURNAMES. A Series of Essays on Family Nomenclature, Historical, Etymological, and Humorous; with Chapters on Canting Arms, Rebuses, the Roll of Battel Abbey, a List of Latinized Surnames, &c., by MARK ANTONY LOWER, *second edition, enlarged*, post 8vo. pp. 292, *with 20 woodcuts, cloth, 6s*

To those who are curious about their patronymic, it will be found a very instructive and amusing volume—mingling wit and pleasantry, with antiquarian research and historical interest.

"An instructive and amusing volume, which ought to be popular. Perhaps no subject is more curious than the history of proper names. How few persons are there who have not on one occasion or other been struck with the singular names which have fallen under their own observation, and who have not sought for the information as to their origin? Yet we know of no work of any value, much more a popular work, which treats on the subject. Mr. Lower has written a very good and well-arranged book, which we can with confidence recommend to our readers."—*Archæologist*.

- 144 APPLICATION of Heraldry to the illustration of various University and Collegiate Antiquities, by H. A. WOODHAM, Esq. 4to. Part I, *coloured plate, and 30 cuts of arms, 6s*—Part II, *coloured plate, and 2 woodcuts, 3s 6d*  
(*Camb. Antig. Soc.*)

- 145 A GENERAL Armory of England, Scotland, and Ireland; comprising a Registry of all Armorial Bearings, from the earliest to the present time, by J. BURKE, Esq. and J. B. BURKE, Esq., royal 8vo. THIRD EDITION, with Supplement, 1200 *pages, in double columns, illuminated title-page, cloth, £1. 1s* (pub. at £2. 2s)

The most useful book on Heraldry extant; it embodies all the arms of Guillim, Edmondson, Robson, Berry, and others, prefaced by a history of the art.

- 146 A GENEALOGICAL and Heraldic History of the Extinct and Dormant Baronetcies of England, Ireland, and Scotland, by J. BURKE, Esq. and J. B. BURKE, Esq., medium 8vo. SECOND EDITION, 638 *closely printed pages, in double columns, with about 1000 arms engraved on wood, fine portrait of JAMES I., and illuminated title-page, extra cloth*, 10s (pub. at £1. 8s)

This work, which has engaged the attention of the Authors for several years, comprises nearly a thousand families, many of them amongst the most ancient and eminent in the kingdom, each carried down to its representative or representatives still existing, with elaborate and minute details of the alliances, achievements, and fortunes, generation after generation, from the earliest to the latest period. The work is printed to correspond precisely with the last edition of Mr. Burke's Dictionary of the Existing Peerage and Baronetage; the armorial bearings are engraved in the best style, and are incorporated with the text as in that work.

- 147 PEDIGREES of the Nobility and Gentry of Hertfordshire, by WILLIAM BERRY, late and for fifteen years Registering Clerk in the College of Arms, Author of the "Encyclopædia Heraldica," &c. &c. folio, (only 125 printed), *boards*, £3. 10s—reduced to £1. 5s

"These Collections of Pedigrees will be found of great utility, though not of sufficient proof in themselves to establish the claims of kindred set forth in them: but affording a ready clue to such necessary proof whenever it should be required, by pointing out the places of nativity, baptism, marriages, and burials, and such other legal documents, as localities will otherwise afford, and the modern entries in the Herald's College, are of no better authority, requiring the very same kind of proof for legal purposes. This observation will perhaps silence the ill-natured remarks which have emanated from that quarter: and it is self-evident that the printing of 250 copies is a much safer record than one manuscript entry there, which might easily be destroyed."—*Preface.*

---

#### TOPOGRAPHY, ARCHÆOLOGY, AND ARCHITECTURE.

- 148 A HAND-BOOK to Lewes in Sussex, Historical and Descriptive, with Notices of the Recent Discoveries at the Priory, by MARK ANTONY LOWER, 12mo. *many engravings, cloth*, 2s
- 149 THE HISTORY of the Town of Gravesend in Kent, and of the Port of London, by R. P. CRUDEN, late Mayor of Gravesend, royal 8vo. 37 *fine plates and woodcuts, a very handsome volume, cloth*, 1843, reduced from £1. 8s to 10s
- 150 HISTORY and Antiquities of Dartford, in Kent, with Incidental Notices of the Places in its Neighbourhood, by J. DUNKIN, Author of the "History of the Hundreds of Bullington and Ploughley in Oxfordshire;" "History of Bicester;" "History of Bromley," &c. 8vo. 17 *plates, cloth, (only 250 printed)*, 21s

- 151 HISTORY of Banbury in Oxfordshire, including copious Historical and Antiquarian Notices of the Neighbourhood, by ALFRED BEESLEY, thick 8vo. 684 *closely printed pages with 66 woodcuts, engraved in the first style of art, by O. Jewitt, of Oxford, (pub. at £1. 5s) now reduced to 14s*

"The neighbourhood of Banbury is equally rich in British, Roman, Saxon, Norman, and English Antiquities, of all which Mr. Beesley has given regularly cleared accounts. Banbury holds an important place in the history of the Parliamentary War of the Seventeenth Century, and was the scene of the great Battle of Edghill, and of the important fight of Cropredy Bridge. Relating to the events of that period, the author has collected a great body of local information of the most interesting kind. By no means the least valuable part of Mr. Beesley's work, in his account of the numerous interesting early churches, which characterize the Banbury district."—*The Archaeologist*.

J. R. SMITH having bought the whole stock of the above very interesting volume, invites the Subscribers to complete their copies in parts without delay, the price of which will be (for a short time) 1s. 6d. instead of 2s. 6d.

- 152 THE VISITOR'S Guide to Knole House, near Seven Oaks in Kent, with Catalogue of the Pictures contained in the Mansion, a Genealogical History of the Sackville Family, &c. &c., by J. H. BRADY, F.R.A.S., 12mo. 27 *woodcuts by Bonner, Sly, &c. cloth, 4s 6d—Large Paper, 10s*

"A very interesting guide to one of the most remarkable old Family Mansions, or we might even say, palaces, of England. The biographical notices of the portraits are very curious, and the description of old trees, and other particulars in the park and gardens will amuse the gardener; while the architect will be instructed by the engravings of different parts of the house, and of the ancient furniture, more particularly of the fire-places, fire-dogs, chairs, tripods, masks, sconces, &c."

J. C. LOUDON, *Gardener's Magazine*, Jan. 1840.

- 153 ILLUSTRATIONS of Knole House, from Drawings by KNIGHT, engraved on wood by Bonner, Sly, &c. 8vo. 16 *plates with descriptions, 5s*

- 154 GREENWICH; its History, Antiquities, and Public Buildings, by H. S. RICHARDSON, 12mo. *fine woodcuts by Baxter, 1s 6d*

- 155 THE FOLKSTONE Fiery Serpent, together with the Humours of the DOVER MAYOR; being an Ancient Ballad full of Mystery and pleasant Conceit, now first collected and printed from the various MS. copies in possession of the inhabitants of the South-east Coast of Kent, with Notes, 12mo. 1s

- 156 A BRIEF Account of the Stowting, in Kent, and of the Antiquities lately discovered there, by the Rev. F. WRENCH, Rector, 8vo. *three folding plates etched by the author, 2s 6d*

- 157 HISTORY and Antiquities of the Hundred of Compton, Berks, with Dissertations on the Roman Station of Calleva Atrebatum, and the Battle of Ashdown, by W. HEWITT, Jun., 8vo. 18 *plates, cloth, (only 250 printed), reduced from 15s to 7s 6d*

- 158 BIBLIOTHECA CANTIANA, a Bibliographical Account of what has been published on the History, Topography, Antiquities, Customs, and Family Genealogy of the COUNTY of KENT, with Biographical Notes, by JOHN RUSSELL SMITH, in a handsome 8vo. volume, pp. 370, *with two plates of fac-similes of Autographs of 33 eminent Kentish Writers*, 14s reduced to 5s—*large paper*, 10s 6d

*Contents*—I. Historians of the County. II. Principal Maps of the County. III. Heraldic Visitations, with reference to the MSS. in the British Museum and other places. IV. Tracts printed during the Civil War and Commonwealth, 1640-1660. V. A Chronological List of all the LOCAL, PERSONAL, and PRIVATE ACTS of Parliament (upwards of 600), which have been passed on the County, from Edward I. to Queen Victoria. VI. Works relative to the County in general. VII. Particular Parishes, Seats, Customs, and Family Genealogy, in alphabetical order. The work also comprises a notice of every Paper which has been written on the County, and published in the *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society*, *Gentlemen's Magazine*, *Archæologia*, *Vetusta Monumenta*, *Topographer*, *Antiquarian Repertory*, and numerous other valuable publications, with a copious Index of every person and place mentioned throughout the volume.

- 159 THE LOCAL Historian's Table-Book of Remarkable Occurrences, Historical Facts, Traditions, Legendary and Descriptive Ballads, &c. &c., connected with the Counties of NEWCASTLE-ON-TYNE, NORTHUMBERLAND, and DURHAM, by M. A. RICHARDSON, royal 8vo. *profusely illustrated with woodcuts, now complete in 8 vols. royal 8vo. cloth, 9s each*, or the Divisions sold separately as follows:—HISTORICAL DIVISION, 5 vols.—LEGENDARY DIVISION, 3 vols.

"The legendary portion will be found very interesting volumes by those who take no interest in the Historical portion.

"This chronology of local occurrences, from the earliest times when a date is ascertainable possesses an especial interest for the residents of the Northern Counties; but, inasmuch as it records Historical events as well as trivial incidents, and includes Biographical notices of men whose fame extended beyond their birth-places, it is not without a value to the general reader. The work is divided into two portions, the larger consisting of the chronicle, and the lesser of the traditions and ballads of the country. Some of these are very characteristic and curious; they invest with poetic associations almost every ruin or plot of ground; and the earlier legends of moss troopers and border-strifes afford an insight into the customs and state of society in remote periods. The handsome pages are illustrated with woodcuts of old buildings and other antiquities."—*Spectator*.

- 160 NEWCASTLE TRACTS: Reprints of Rare and Curious Tracts, chiefly illustrative of the History of the Northern Counties; *beautifully printed in crown 8vo. on a fine thick paper, with fac-simile Titles, and other features characteristic of the originals, (only 100 copies printed)*, Nos. I. to XXX., £2. 17s 6d

Purchasers are expected to take the succeeding Tracts as published.

- 161 TRAVELS of Nicander Nucius of Corcyra in England, during the Reign of Henry VII., edited by Dr. CRAMER, small 4to. *cloth*, 4s (Camden Soc.)
- 162 A JOURNEY to Beresford Hall, in Derbyshire, the Seat of CHARLES COTTON, Esq. are celebrated Author and Angler, by W. ALEXANDER, F.S.A., F.L.S., late Keeper of the Prints in the British Museum, crown 4to. *printed on tinted paper, with a spirited frontispiece, representing Walton and his adopted Son Cotton in the Fishing-house, and vignette title-page, cloth*, 5s  
Dedicated to the Anglers of Great Britain and the various Walton and Cotton Clubs, only 100 printed.
- 163 HISTORY of Portsmouth, Portsea, Landport, Southsea and Gosport, by HENRY SLIGHT, Esq., 8vo. third edition, *bds.* 4s
- 164 HISTORICAL and Chorographical Description of the County of Essex, by JOHN NORDEN, 1594, now first printed, and edited by Sir H. ELLIS, *very curious map*, small 4to. *cloth*, 4s 6d (Camden Soc.)
- 165 KEMP'S Nine Daies Wonder, performed in a Daunce from London to Norwich, with Introduction and Notes by the Rev. A. Dyce, small 4to. *cloth*, 4s 6d (ib.)  
"A great curiosity, and, as a rude picture of national manners, extremely well worth reprinting."—*Gifford's Notes to Ben Jonson.*
- 166 HISTORIC Sites and other Remarkable and Interesting Places in the County of Suffolk, by JOHN WODDERSPOON, with Prefatory Verses by BERNARD BARTON, Esq., and a Poetical Epilogue by a "SUFFOLK VILLAGER," improved edition, *fine woodcuts*, post 8vo. pp. 232, *closely printed, and containing as much matter as many 12s volumes, cloth*, 6s 6d  
*Principal Contents*:—Framlingham Castle; Staningfield; Rookwood; Mrs. Inchbald; Aldham Common; the Martyr's Stone; Westthorpe Hall, the residence of Charles Brandon; Duke of Suffolk; Ipswich; Wolsey's Gate and Mr. Sparrow's House; Rendlesham; Redgrave; Bury St. Edmunds, the Abbey; David Hartley; Bp. Gardiner; George Bloomfield; Wetheringset; Haughley Castle; Grimstone Hall; Cavendish, the Voyager; Framlingham Church, the burial place of Surrey, the Poet; Bungay Castle; Dunwich; Aldborough; Wingfield, and the Old Halls of Suffolk.
- 167 A NEW Guide to Ipswich, containing Notices of its Ancient and Modern History, Buildings, and Social and Commercial Condition, by JOHN WODDERSPOON, fcap. 8vo. *fine woodcuts, cloth*, 2s 6d  
"It is handsomely got up, and reflects great credit on Ipswich typography."—*Spectator.*
- 168 SPECIMENS of College Plate in the University of Cambridge, by the Rev. J. J. SMITH, 4to. 13 *fine plates*, 15s (Camb. Antiq. Soc.)

- 169 HISTORIA Collegii Jesu Cantabrigiensis à SHERMANNO, olim præs. ejusdem Collegii, edita J. O. HALLIWELL, 8vo. cloth, 2s
- 170 THE ARCHÆOLOGIST and Journal of Antiquarian Science, edited by J. O. HALLIWELL, 8vo. Nos I. to X. COMPLETE, with Index, pp. 490, with 19 engravings, cloth, reduced from 10s 6d to 5s 6d
- Containing original articles on Architecture, Historical Literature, Round Towers of Ireland, Philology, Bibliography, Topography, Proceedings of the various Antiquarian Societies, Retrospective Reviews, and Reviews of Recent Antiquarian Works, &c.
- 171 ROMAN and Roman-British Remains at and near Shefford, Co. Beds, described by Sir H. DRYDEN, Bt.; with a Catalogue of Coins from the same place, by C. KING, 4to. 3 plates, coloured, 6s 6d (*Canb. Antiq. Soc.*)
- 172 ROMAN-BRITISH Remains found at Warden, Co. Beds, described by Professor HENSLOW, 4to. 4 plates (*ib.*)
- 173 NOTITIA BRITANNIÆ, or an Inquiry concerning the Localities, Habits, Condition, and Progressive Civilization of the Aborigines of Britain; to which is appended a brief Retrospect of the Result of their Intercourse with the Romans, by W. D. SAULL, F.S.A., F.G.S., &c. 8vo. engravings, 3s 6d
- 174 CALEDONIA ROMANA; a Descriptive Account of the Roman Antiquities of Scotland; preceded by an introductory view of the aspect of the Country, and state of its Inhabitants in the First Century of the Christian Era, and by a Summary of the Historical Transactions connected with the Roman Occupation of North Britain. By ROBERT STUART, 4to. many fine plates, plates, 18s

"An able and highly readable (and cheap) volume on the transactions of the Romans in Scotland, and the remains they have left behind them in that part of the island. . . . The little that is known of the acts of the Romans in Scotland, and of the state of the people in that age, is stated by Mr. Stuart in a graceful and flowing narrative. . . . The view which he gives of the country, at the time when it was yet a sylvan wilderness, occupied by tribes not much different from those of Missouri and Araucania, is like a chapter in some beautiful romance. The roads and camps are all traced carefully, even unto Ptoroton and Bona, (Burghead and Loch Ness,) and an ample chapter at the end is devoted to the wall of Antoninus. . . . The scholar has here a satisfactory account of the Roman Antiquities of Scotland, illustrated by numerous draughts (in Lithography); while the general reader is presented with a work which he may peruse for the sake of its information, without ever feeling it in the least dull."—*Chambers's Journal*.

- 175 A VERBATIM Report of the Proceedings at a Special General Meeting of the British Archæological Association, held at the Theatre of the Western Literary Institution, 5th March, 1845, T. J. Pettigrew in the Chair. With an Introduction, by THOMAS WRIGHT, 8vo. sewed, 1s 6d

- 176 BRITISH ARCHÆOLOGICAL ASSOCIATION. A Report of the Proceedings and Excursions of the Members of the British Archæological Association, at the Canterbury Session, Sept. 1844. By A. J. DUNKIN, thick 8vo. *with many engravings, cloth, £1. 1s*

"The volume contains most of the papers entire that were read at the Meeting, and revised by the Authors. It will become a scarce book as only 150 were printed; and it forms the first yearly volume of the Archæological Association, or the Archæological Institute.

- 177 HISTORY of the Origin and Establishment of Gothic Architecture, and an Inquiry into the mode of Painting upon and Staining Glass, as practised in the Ecclesiastical Structures of the Middle Ages. By JOHN SIDNEY HAWKINS, F.A.S., royal 8vo. *eleven plates, bds. 3s 6d* (pub. at 12s)  
 178 ACCOUNT of the Sextry Barn at Ely, lately Demolished. With Architectural Illustrations by PROFESSOR WILLIS, 4to. *plates, 3s* (*Camb. Antiq. Soc.*)  
 179 ARCHITECTURAL Nomenclature of the Middle Ages. By PROFESSOR WILLIS, 4to. *3 plates, 7s* (*ibid.*)  
 180 REPORT of the First, Second, and Third General Meetings of the Cambridge Antiquarian Society, 8vo. *1s each* (*ibid.*)  
 181 EPITAPHS. A Collection of Epitaphs and Monumental Inscriptions, chiefly in Scotland, 12mo. *bds. 5s*

The most extensive collection ever published relating to Scotland; it contains an entire reprint of the rare work entitled "Monteith's Theatre of Mortality, 1704."

## NUMISMATICS.

- 182 COINS of the Romans relating to Britain, Described and Illustrated. By J. Y. AKERMAN, F.S.A., Secretary to the Numismatic Society, &c. Second edition, greatly enlarged, 8vo. *with plates and woodcuts, cloth, 10s 6d*

The 'Prix de Numismatique' has just been awarded by the French Institute to the author for this work.

"Mr. Akerman's volume contains a notice of every known variety, with copious illustrations, and is published at a very moderate price: it should be consulted, not merely for these particular coins, but also for facts most valuable to all who are interested in the Romano-British history."—*Archæological Journal*.

- 183 ANCIENT Coins of Cities and Princes, Geographically arranged and described, HISPANIA, GALLIA, BRITANNIA. By J. Y. AKERMAN, F.S.A., 8vo. *with engravings of many hundred coins from actual examples, cloth, 18s*

- 184 A LIST of Tokens issued by Wiltshire Tradesmen, in the 17th Century. By J. Y. AKERMAN, 8vo. *plate, containing 13 specimens*, 1s 6d
- 185 ARIANA ANTIQUA ; A Descriptive Account of the Antiquities and Coins of Affghanistan, with a Memoir on the buildings called Topes. By C. MASSON. Edited by H. H. WILSON, Sanscrit Professor at Oxford, 4to. *many plates of antiquities, and many hundred coins, cloth, £2. 2s*
- A very handsome and cheap volume. Printed at the expense of the East India Company.
- 186 ESSAY on the Numismatic History of the Ancient Kingdom of the East Angles. By D. H. HAIGH, royal 8vo. *5 plates, containing numerous figures of coins, sewed*, 6s
- 187 LECTURES on the Coinage of the Greeks and Romans, delivered in the University of Oxford. By EDWARD CARDWELL, D.D., Principal of St. Alban's Hall, and Professor of Ancient History, 8vo. *cloth*, reduced from 8s 6d to 4s
- A very interesting historical volume, and written in a pleasing and popular manner.
- 188 A HAND-BOOK of English Coins from the Conquest to Victoria. By L. JEWITT, 12mo. *11 plates, cloth*, 1s
- 189 NUMISMATIC Chronicle and Proceedings of the Numismatic Society, 5 vols. and 3 Nos. to Oct. 1843 ; *a subscriber's copy, many plates, cloth, £2. 12s 6d (pub. at £3. 17s)*

---

### LITERARY HISTORY, CRITICISM, AND BIBLIOGRAPHY.

- 190 LECTURES on Dramatic Art and Literature. By AUGUSTUS WILLIAM SCHLEGEL, translated from the German by JOHN BLACK, Esq., Editor of the 'Morning Chronicle,' 2 vols. foolscap 8vo. SECOND EDITION, *cloth*, 12s

"The present work contains a critical and historical account of the ancient and modern drama—the Greek, Latin, Italian, German, Spanish, and English. The view which the author has taken of the standard productions, whether tragic or comic, is ingenious and just, and his reasonings on the principles of taste are as satisfactory as they are profound. The acute and sensible remarks—the high tone of morality—are very admirable and exemplary ; and we refer those who desire to elevate their understandings to a guide so learned and philosophical as the author of these volumes."—*Edinb. Rev.*

"In a few pages we reap the fruit of the labour of a whole life. Every opinion formed by the author, every epithet given to the writers of whom he speaks, is beautiful and just, concise and animated."

*Mad. de Stael's Germany.*

"A work of extraordinary merit."—*Quarterly Review*, Vol. XII. pp. 112-46.

- 191 WHO WAS JACK WILSON the Singer of Shakespeare's Stage? An attempt to prove the identity of this person with John Wilson, Dr. of Music in the University of Oxford, A.D. 1644. By E. F. RIMBAULT, L.L.D., F.S.A., 8vo. *sewed*, 1s
- 192 ON THE CHARACTER OF FALSTAFF, as originally exhibited by Shakespeare in the two parts of King Henry IV. By J. O. HALLIWELL, 12mo. *cloth*, (only 100 printed), 2s
- 192\*AN INTRODUCTION to Shakespeare's Midsummer Nights' Dream. By J. O. HALLIWELL, 8vo. *cloth*, (only 250 printed) 3s
- 193 FIRST SKETCH of Shakespeare's Merrie Wives of Windsor, with a collection of the Tales on which the Plot is supposed to have been founded. Edited by J. O. HALLIWELL, 8vo. *cloth*, 4s 6d (Shakespeare Soc.)
- 194 AN ACCOUNT of the only known Manuscript of Shakespeare's Plays, comprising some important variations and corrections in the Merry Wives of Windsor, obtained from a Playhouse copy of that Play recently discovered. By J. O. HALLIWELL, 8vo. *sewed*, 1s
- 195 SHAKESPERIANA, a Catalogue of the Early Editions of Shakespeare's Plays, and of the Commentaries and other Publications illustrative of his Works. By J. O. HALLIWELL, 8vo. *cloth*, 3s  
 "Indispensable to everybody who wishes to carry on any inquiries connected with Shakespeare, or who may have a fancy for Shakespearian Bibliography."—*Spectator*.  
 "It ought to be placed by the side of every edition, It is the most concise, yet the most copious illustration of the subject which has been given to the public."—*Lit. Gaz.*
- 196 OBERON'S Vision [in the Midsummer Nights' Dream. Illustrated by a comparison with LYLIE's Endymion. By the Rev. J. HALPIN, 8vo. *cloth*, 4s 6d (Shakespeare Soc.)
- 197 THE SHAKESPEARE Society's Papers, being a Miscellany of Contributions Illustrative of the objects of the Society. Vol. I. 6s, Vol. II. 6s 8vo. *cloth* (*ibid.*)
- 198 REPORT Extraordinary of a late Meeting of the Society of Antiquaries, in a letter to "PUNCH," occasioned by a remarkable Omission in that Gentleman's Account of the Metropolis, post 8vo. 6d
- 199 ENGLISH MONASTIC LIBRARIES. I. Catalogue of the Library of the Priory of Bretton, Yorkshire. II. Notice of the Libraries belonging to other Religious Houses. By the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER, F.S.A., 4to. *very few printed*, 5s
- 200 CATALOGUE of the Original Library of St. Catherine's Hall, Cambridge, 1475. Edited by Prof. CORRIE, 4to. 1s 6d (Camb. Antiq. Soc.)
- 201 CATALOGUE of the Contents of the Codex Holbrookianus. By J. O. HALLIWELL, 8vo. 1s

- 202 DESCRIPTIVE Catalogue of the Manuscripts and Scarce Books in the Library of St. John's College, Cambridge, Part I. 4s 6d—Part II. 4s 6d, 4to. (*ibid.*)
- 203 MANUSCRIPT Rarities of the University of Cambridge. By J. O. HALLIWELL, 8vo. *bds.* 6s  
A companion to Hartshorne's "Book Rarities" of the same University.
- 204 CATALOGUE of the Miscellaneous Manuscripts preserved in the Library of the Royal Society. By J. O. HALLIWELL, 8vo. 2s
- 205 A FEW HINTS to Novices in Manuscript Literature. By J. O. HALLIWELL, 8vo. 1s
- 206 AN ACCOUNT of the European Manuscripts in the Chetham Library, Manchester. By J. O. HALLIWELL, 12mo. 1s
- 207 BIBLIOTHECA SCOTO-CELTICA; or, an Account of all the Books which have been printed in the Gaelic Language, with Bibliographical and Biographical Notices. By JOHN REID, 8vo. *bds.* 5s (pub. at 10s 6d)

---

#### BIOGRAPHY, DIARIES, CORRESPONDENCE AND STATE PAPERS.

- 208 ENGLAND'S WORTHIES, under whom all the Civil and Bloody Warres, since Anno 1642 to Anno 1647, are related. By JOHN VICARS, Author of "England's Parliamentary Chronicle," &c. &c., royal 12mo. *reprinted in the old style, (similar to Lady Willoughby's Diary,) with copies of the 18 rare portraits after Hollar, &c. half morocco, 5s*  
Copies of the original edition have been sold from £16. to £20.  
The portraits comprise, Robert, Earl of Essex; Robert, Earl of Warwick; Lord Montague, Earl of Denbigh, Earl of Stamford, David Leslie, Gen. Fairfax, Sir Thomas Fairfax. O. Cromwell, Skippon, Col. Massey, Sir W. Brereton, Sir W. Waller, Col. Langhorne, Gen. Poyntz, Sir Thos. Middleton, Gen. Brown, and Gen. Mitton.
- 209 AUTOBIOGRAPHY of Joseph Lister, of Bradford, in Yorkshire, to which is added a contemporary account of the Defence of Bradford, and Capture of Leeds by the Parliamentarians in 1642. Edited by THOMAS WRIGHT, 8vo. only 250 copies printed, *cloth, 4s*  
"This volume is curious in several respects: 1st, as showing us the spirit, tenets, and manners of the nonconformists; 2dly, as minutely describing some remarkable affairs belonging to the civil wars; and 3rdly, as throwing a light upon the general habits of a particular class of the inhabitants of England two hundred years ago."—*Lit. Gaz.*  
"Several remarkable matters may be collected from its perusal, and such compositions are always valuable as pictures of character and manners."—*Gent.'s Mag.*  
"The volume is a curious and interesting fragment of the history of those eventful times. It gives a welcome glimpse of the early nonconformists."—*Bradford Observer.*

- 210 LOVE LETTERS of Mrs. Piozzi, written when she was Eighty, to the handsome Actor, William Augustus Conway, aged Twenty-seven, 8vo. *sewed*, 2s

"—— written at three, four, and five o'clock (in the morning) by an Octogenary pen, a heart (as Mrs. Lee says) twenty-six years old, and as H. L. P. feels it to be, *all your own*."—*Letter V. 3d Feb.* 1820.

"This is one of the most extraordinary collections of love epistles we have ever chanced to meet with, and the well known literary reputation of the lady—the Mrs. Thrale, of Dr. Johnson and Miss Burney celebrity—considerably enhances their interest. The letters themselves it is not easy to characterize; nor shall we venture to decide whether they more bespeak the drivelling of dotage or the folly of love; in either case they present human nature to us under a new aspect, and furnish one of those riddles which nothing yet dreamt of in our philosophy can satisfactorily solve."—*Polytechnic Rev.*

- 211 COLLECTION of Letters on Scientific Subjects, illustrative of the Progress of Science in England temp. Elizabeth to Charles II. Edited by J. O. HALLIWELL, 8vo. *cloth*, 3s  
(*Historical Society of Science.*)

Comprising letters of Digges, Dee, Tycho Brahe, Lower, Harriott, Lydyat, Sir W. Petty, Sir. C. Cavendish, Brancker, Pell, &c.; also the autobiography of Sir Samuel Morland, from a MS. in Lambeth Palace, Nat. Tarpoley's Corrector Analyticus, &c. &c.

- 212 LETTERS of James, Earl of Perth, to his Sister, the Countess of Errol, and other members of his Family, 1688—1696. Edited by W. JERDAN, small 4to. *cloth*, 6s 6d  
(*Camden Soc.*)

- 213 PLUMPTON CORRESPONDENCE; a Series of Letters written in the reigns of Edward IV. to Henry VIII., by the Plumpton Family of Yorkshire. Edited by T. STAPLETON, small 4to. pp. 450, *cloth*, 18s (*Camden Soc.*)

- 214 MEMOIR of John Aubrey the Antiquary, embracing his Autobiographical Sketches, Review of his personal and literary merits, and Anecdotes of his Contemporaries. By JOHN BRITTON, 4to. *engravings, very few printed, cloth*, 15s  
(*Wiltshire Topog. Soc.*)

- 215 THE WILL of Thomas Tusser, author of the "Five Hundred Points of Good Husbandry," to which is added his Metrical Autobiography, 4to. *only 100 privately printed by C. Clark, of Great Totham Hall Essex*, 1s,

- 216 DIARY of Dr. Thomas Cartwright, Bishop of Chester, Aug. 1686 to Oct. 1687, now first printed. Edited by the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER, sm. 4to. *cloth*, 4s 6d (*Camden Soc.*)

Cartwright was one of James the Second's creatures for the purpose of furthering Popery in England, and also principal commissioner for depriving Dr. Hough of the Presidency of Magdalen College, Oxford.

- 217 PRIVATE Diary of Dr. John Dee, and the Catalogue of his Library of MSS. now first printed. Edited by J. O. HALLIWELL, small 4to. *cloth*, 5s  
(*ibid.*)

It gives the reader a most curious insight into the "sayings and doings" of this celebrated man during his residence at Mortlake in Surrey.

- 218 AUTOBIOGRAPHY of Sir John Bramston, K.B. of Screens, in the County of Essex, 1611 to 1700. Edited by LORD BRAYBROOKE, small 4to. 400 pp. *cloth*, 10s 6d  
(Camden Soc.)

A very interesting piece of autobiography.

- 219 MEMOIRS of Edward Alleyn, Founder of Dulwich College, including new particulars of Shakespeare, Ben Jonson, Massinger, Marston, &c., by J. P. COLLIER, 8vo. *cloth*, 7s 6d  
(Shakespeare Soc.)

- 220 ALLEYN PAPERS: a Collection of Original Documents illustrative of the Life and Times of Edward Alleyn, and of the Early English Stage and Drama. Edited by J. P. COLLIER. [A Companion to the previous Article.] 8vo. *cloth*, 4s 6d  
(*ibid.*)

- 221 THE DIARY and Account Book of Philip Henslowe the Player, from 1591 to 1609, now first printed from the MS. in Dulwich College. Edited by J. P. COLLIER, 8vo. 7s 6d (*ibid.*)

- 222 NOTES on Ben Jonson's Conversations with William Drummond of Hawthornden. Edited by D. Laing, 8vo. *cloth*, 5s  
(*ibid.*)

- 223 ORIGINAL Letters of Eminent Literary Men of the XVIth, XVIIth, and XVIIIth Centuries, from the originals in the British Museum and the Bodleian Library, with Notes by Sir HENRY ELLIS, small 4to. *cloth*, pp. 468, *facsimiles*, 10s 6d  
(Camden Soc.)

- 224 ACCOUNT of the Life, Writings, and Inventions of Sir Samuel Morland, Master of Mechanics to Charles II. By J. O. HALLIWELL, 8vo. 1s

- 225 ACCOUNT of the Rites and Ceremonies which took place at the Consecration of Abp. Parker. Edited by J. GOODWIN, 4to. *facsimile*, 3s 6d  
(Camb. Antiq. Soc.)

A refutation of the foolish and absurd story, commonly known as the Nag's Head Consecration.

- 226 EGERTON PAPERS. A Collection of Public and Private Documents, chiefly illustrative of the Times of Elizabeth and James I. from the original MSS. the property of Lord Francis Egerton. Edited by J. P. COLLIER, sm. 4to. pp. 518, *cloth*, 7s 6d  
(Camden Soc.)

"Mr. Collier has fallen into a rich field, and full of pasture, among the Egerton papers. They seem to be stored with abundant materials, and the single volume before us is a valuable sample of their national interest, and which throw a light upon public events hitherto imperfectly appreciated."—*Lit. Gaz.*

- 227 CORRESPONDENCE of Robert Dudley, Earl of Leicester, during his Government of the Low Countries in 1585 and 1586. Edited by J. BRUCE, thick sm. 4to. 500 pp. *cloth*, 12s  
(Camden Soc.)





YB 71927

